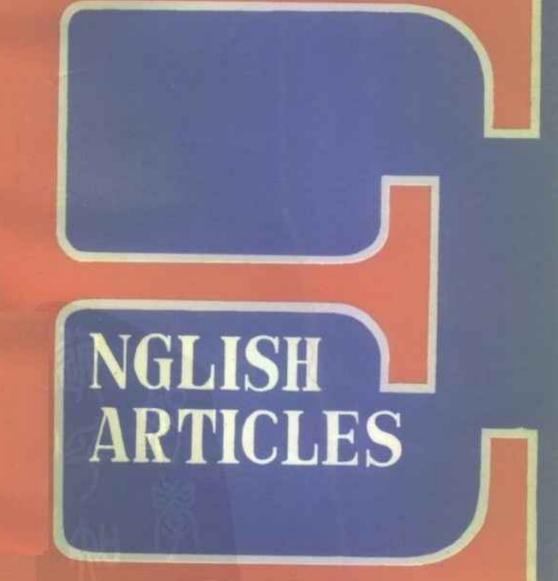
英语冠词用法详解

刘国善 编著



英语冠词用法详解

刘国善 编著

山东科学技术出版社 ーカハハ年・済南

英语冠词用法详解 刘国善编者

山东科学技术出版社出版 (济南市玉國路) 山东省新华书店及行 山东新华印刷厂潍坊厂印刷

850×1168 毫米 32 开本 9.76 印張 350 千字 1988 年 1 月第 1 版 1988 年 1 月第 1 次印駒 印数, 1 一 14,809

ISBN 7—5331—0225—8/H·4 定价 3.00 元

前言

各类各级英语考试,如大学及研究生入学考试、评定职称 及出国"托福"(TOEFL)考试,都少不了冠词用法。各行各业, 包括科技、外贸、外事、旅游各界,在使用英语及在英汉互译中,也都离不开冠词问题。冠词是使用率最高、意义色彩最复杂的词类,形式虽少、却常使人不知所从,从而造成病句、错句、曲解或误译。

国内外对英语语法研究的最新成果,使有关冠词用法的论述比以前大大科学化、系统化了,这就给教师讲课和学习者掌握冠词,带来极大方便。例如,将规律用法与惯用法区别开来,将规律用法中的基本用法与扩展用法区别开来,这样就把千头万绪归纳得"纲"、"目"分明。

本书在介绍了完整而清晰的冠词用法新体系以后,详细讨论了一般语法书讲得很少的冠词惯用法,如冠词的省略与重复,与代词等连用的用法,在约定俗成、相映成趣的 in the body, in a body, in body(3.4.1)中,以及说"一见如故"所用的at (the) first meeting,说"一眼看出"所用的at a glance,说"一见钟情"所用的at first sight(3.7.4)等之类惯用语中各种不同的冠词形式。

本书根据实用和英语教师讲课、学生学习的需要,用引述的有限理论直接指导系统全面的实际用例。例句,一方面注重联系、对比,如从人名 Rose 与确指、不确指、类指具体的the/a rose/flower (1.7.1, 1.7.3) 联系到抽象化的 in flower (1.6.5) 及象征化的 in the flower of youth, Which is better,

the breast (母奶) or the bottle?(2.9.4),将不可数的 joy, the joy 对比于a weekly joy, joys(2.7.1)等;另一方面,更求逐步深入说明基本的、扩展的、一般的、特殊惯常的用法,如从go into the church 指具体"走进教堂"的本义扩展到抽象的指类意义"就任教会职务(当牧师等)",再到go to church进一步抽象化的意义"做礼拜"(2.9.1,2.9.2);从指整类强调全体的复数形式 the Indians/peasants 到指整类以区别于他类的单数形式 the Indian/peasant(2.9.10);从不可数名词词组a great deal of/much dust/fuss引申到惯用的 What a dust/fuss!(2.4.9)等。

本书在几个主要讲述阶段后面备有小结性图表和概述若干疑难用法纵横关系的表格,这些图表和表格有助于全面、透彻理解英语冠词的各种形式、意义及难点。此外,在目录中详细列出了各节标题,以便读者查找。

水平所限, 疏漏、谬误难免, 恳请读者批评指正。

编 者 一九八七年

目 录

第 一 编 英语冠词规律用法(I):基本用法

第一章	英语冠词 的 汉语含义
1,1,1	a/an, the 有时分别相当于"一"和"这(那)"1
1.1.2	a/an, the 往往不相当于"一"和"这(那)"2
1.1.3	冠词无词汇意义,但不可少也不可互换3
	"零位冠词"在汉语中无相当的表现法 4
第二章	冠词 a/an, the 的几种读音5
1.2.1	a/an 的轻读读音5
1.2.2	a/an 要重读的情况6
1.2.3	the 的轻读 读音7
1.2.4	the 要重读的 情况8
第三章	a/an, the 的来源、本意与基本用法9
	-2 the 与 a/an 的来源9
1.3.1- 1.3.1	-2 the 与 a/an 的来源9 the 来自指示代词9
1.3.1 1.3.1 1.3.2	-2 the 与 a/an 的来源9 the 来自指示代词9 a 为 an 之弱化变形, an 来自 数词10
1.3.1 1.3.1 1.3.2 1.3.3	-2 the 与 a/an 的来源
1.3.1 1.3.1 1.3.2 1.3.3	-2 the 与 a/an 的来源 9 the 来自指示代词 9 a 为 an 之弱化变形; an 来自数词 10 -5 one 与 a/an 的 不同 10 数词性质与指不确定、指类属性质 10
1.3.1 1.3.2 1.3.3 1.3.3 1.3.4	-2 the 与 a/an 的来源 9 the 来自指示代词 9 a 为 an 之弱化变形; an 来自数词 10 -5 one 与 a/an 的 不同 10 数词性质与指不确定、指类属性质 10 惯用语中二者不可互换 13
1.3.1 1.3.2 1.3.3 1.3.3 1.3.4 1.3.5	-2 the 与 a/an 的来源 9 the 来自指示代词 9 a 为 an 之弱化变形, an 来自数词 10 -5 one 与 a/an 的 不同 10 数词性质与指不确定、指类属性质 10 惯用语中二者不可互换 13 二者与数词连用的不同 14
1.3.1 1.3.2 1.3.3 1.3.4 1.3.5 1.3.6	-2 the 与 a/an 的来源 9 the 来自指示代词 9 a 为 an 之弱化变形, an 来自数词 10 -5 one 与 a/an 的 不同 10 数词性质与指不确定、指类属性质 10 惯用语中二者不可互换 13 二者与数词连用的不同 14 -7 a/an, the 用于指单位名词 15
1.3.1 1.3.2 1.3.3 1.3.4 1.3.5 1.3.6 1.3.6	-2 the 与 a/an 的来源 9 the 来自指示代词 9 a 为 an 之弱化变形, an 来自数词 10 -5 one 与 a/an 的 不同 10 数词性质与指不确定、指类属性质 10 惯用语中二者不可互换 13 二者与数词连用的不同 14 -7 a/an, the 用于指单位名词 15 a/an("每")原属介词 15
1.3.1 1.3.2 1.3.3 1.3.4 1.3.5 1.3.6 1.3.6	-2 the 与 a/an 的来源 9 the 来自指示代词 9 a 为 an 之弱化变形, an 来自数词 10 -5 one 与 a/an 的 不同 10 数词性质与指不确定、指类属性质 10 惯用语中二者不可互换 13 二者与数词连用的不同 14 -7 a/an, the 用于指单位名词 15

1.3.8	"不确指"与"确指"	17
1.3.9	a/an 用于"指听者未知"	18
1.3.10	a/an,the基本用法小结	20
1.3.11	冠词名称 article 的来源	21
第四章 名	名词类别与冠词对名词的附加性质 ······	22
1.4.1	名词类别与抽象化程度的差别	····22
1.4.2	名词类别示 意图 ·······	24
1.4.3	可兼属不同类别的名词	25
1.4.4	冠词为附于名词的标志	26
1.4.5	冠词的虚词性质	· · · · 2 7
第五章 "	"独指"、"确指"、"不确指"与"指听者未知"	29
1.5.1-	-3 "独指"形式与其他所指形式的比较	29
1.5.1	最常见的名词四种所指,	····29
1.5.2	无冠词"独指"不同于无冠词复数所指	30
1.5.3	带 the"独指"不同于带 the"确指"	30
1.5.4	-7 "指听者未知"用得比"不确指"更广泛	32
1.5.4	a/an 用于不可数名词"指听者未知"	32
1.5.5	"不确指"与"指听者未知"的比较	••••3
1.5.6	a daughter of Mrs Brown's 之类"指听者未知"	35
1.5.7	冠词加于双重表所有形式的各种意义	• • • 36
	三种貌合神离的无冠词形式	
	无冠词专有名词、可数名词(复)、不可数名词	
1.6.2	兼有可数性与不可数性的名词	39
1.6.3		
1.6.4	常用零位冠词形式的一些个体名词	• • • 41
1.6.5	三种貌合神离无冠词形式的比较	42
1.6.6	零位冠词"概括指"应区别于别具所指标志的无冠	
	词形式	44
第七章 [四种"类指":"概括指"及a(an)/复数/the	
u	"类指"	47
1.7.1-	-2 "概括指""类指"的一种	47

1.7.1 "概括指"首先用于不可数名词47
1.7.2 不可数名词亦可取"指听者未知","确指"形式49
1.7.3-5 a/an、复数、the"类指"——又是三种"类指"50
1.7.3 从"不确指"与"确指"扩展而来的"类指"用法50
1.7.4 与"不确指"、"确指"同形,但属"类指"50
1.7.5 a/an、复数、the, 三种"类指"各司其职51
1.7.6-7 a/an "类指"与复数"类指"的代表 性质52
1.7.6 代表一般个体与代表一类52
1.7.7 改用或加用 some 能区别是否属"类指"53
1.7.8—11 the"类指"的广泛应用54
1.7.8 the "类指" (用单数或复数名词) 直指 整类54
1.7.9 "the+形容词、分词等"的"类指"用法 ······55
1.7.10 "the+形容词、分词等"亦可为"确指" ·······57
1.7.11 the 并非可随意加于任一形容词、分词 ·······58
第八章 名词加与不加冠词的主要用法小结60
1.8.1 四种"特指"形式与四种"类指"形式60
1.8.2 从冠词的基本用法到扩展用法63
第二编
英语冠词规律用法(Ⅱ):扩展用法
第一章 a/an 使得特殊事物一般化66
2.1.1 a/an 加专有名词指不确定的一般事物66
2.1.2 a/an 加专有名词指听者未知的一般事物67
2.1.3 the 使专有名词借作普通名词70
2.1.4 the 强调特定属性或特殊针对性71
2.1.5 a/an, the 指示专有名词转作普通名词············72
2.1.6 由指自然界独有事物转指一般 事物
第二章 "免去冠词(或只用 the) + 词头大写"使得一
般 事物特殊化 75
2.2.1 用于"独指"的家庭成员75

2.2.2 家人与外人之间"独指"家庭成员76
2.2.3 其他范围内的独有人员和独有事物77
2.2.4 the 加于次生专有名词
2.2.5 the 加于由 of 短语构成的专有名词83
2.2.6 the 加普通名词转为专有名词83
2.2.7 the 使普通名词等组成专有名词84
第三章 the 使语句中未确定的事物 特定化87
2.3.1-4 最高级形式等不能决定是"确指"87
2.3.1 带定语不一定是"确指"87
2.3.2 "形容词最高级等+名词"不一定属"确指"89
2.3.3 is the happiest 与 is happiest 等90
2.3.4 表示比较范围的名词加 the问题91
2.3.5—6 most/least, best/worst, first/last 带
the 与否91
2.3.5 指量代词 most 是否带 the91
2.3.6 best/worst, first/last 等是否带 the93
2.3.7-8 the 用于"相对确指"94
2.3.7 前未提及、又无定语的"相对确指"94
2.3.8 惯用短语中表示"相对确指"的 the99
2.3.9 与形容词、副词比较级连用的副词 the100
第四章 a/an 使得综合、抽象事物具体化102
2.4.1-2 a rainy day/spring 与 a mere 2 days/
hours 等102
2.4.1 季节、月份、周日、三餐等名词前冠词的用法102
2.4.2 a/an 加于带定语的复数名词104
2.4.3-7 a/an 加于带定语的各种不可数名词105
2.4.3 带定语不可数名词"概括指"与"指听者未知"105
2.4.4 物质名词、集合名词表示"一种"等107
2.4.5 带定语不可数抽象名词前加 a/an107
2.4.6 带前位定语或带后位 定语108

and the second s

2.4.7 一时、一次、一定程度的运动或 状态等11	0
2.4.8-10 惯加 a/an 的无定语不可数名词11	
2.4.8 几种不可数名词无定语也常加 a/an11	1
2.4.9 a/an 加于无定语不可数名词属惯用法11	
2.4.10 惯用短语中可数、不可数名词所带 a/an11	
第五章 零位冠词形式使得具体事物综合化、抽象化11	
2.5.1-3 可数名词零位冠词形式的意义与用法11	•
2.5.1 零位冠词形式 woman 等的意义11	
2.5.2 零位冠词形式 man 等担任主语等成分12	1
2.5.3 成语、谚语中零位冠词形式作主语12	3
2.5.4-9 可数名词零位冠词形式担任表语等12	:3
2.5.4 man 等表示事物属性的表语12	:3
2.5.5 apprentice 等表示身分、状态的表语12	:6
2.5.6 表示独有亲属、职位的 表语12	8
2.5.7 表示身分、职位等的 补语12	19
2.5.8 表示身分、职位等的 同位语13	0
2.5.9 表示身分、职位等的 as 短语13	
2.5.10-11 可数名词零位冠词形式担任宾语13	3
2.5.10 man 等担任宾语13	3
2.5.11 惯用动词短语中的零位冠词形式13	14
2.5.12-13 可数名词零位冠词形式作介词宾语13	\$5
2.5.12 man, apprentice 等担任介词宾语13	
2.5.13 惯用介词短语中的零位冠词形式13	8
第六章 无冠词或加 the 的复数形式使独特事物一般	
化、分别化13	
2.6.1 专有名词复数形式(不带 冠词)13	
2.6.2 指独有事物名词的复数形式14	
2.6.3 带 the 专有名词、指独有事物名词复数14	
2.6.4 带 the 姓名等的复数形式	2
第 七章 无冠词或加 the 的复数形式使综合、抽象事	
物具体化、分别化14	l5

2.7.1	指"不确定"或"指听者未知"的"多种"、"大量" ·	145
2.7.2	无冠词物质名词 复数	146
2.7.3	the + 物质名词复数	147
2.7.4	无冠词不可数抽象名词 复数	148
2.7.5	the+不可数抽象名词复数	150
2.7.6	复数形式可与单数形式在意义上有所不同	151
第八章 a	·/an"不确指"转"类指"使一般事物典型化、	
丝	综合化	153
2.8.1	a/an"类指"来自"不确指"用法	153
	a/an"类指"的典型化、概括化意义	
	a/an"类指"与 a/an "不确指"的不同	
2.8.4	a/an"类指"能否替换无冠词复数"类指"	156
2.8.5	单、复数两种"类指"用于各种可数名词	157
2.8.6	复数"类指"、a/an"类指"与the"类指"的替换	·····159
第九章 t	he "确指"转"类指"使特定事物综合化、抽	
•	象化	161
	-2 四种"类指"的不同综合化、抽象化程度:	
2.9.1	the"类指"的较高综合、概括性	161
2.9.2	men/a man/the man/man 等用于"类指"	163
2.9.3-	-4 "the+单数名词""指类"	••••165
2.9.3	the wolf/the play 等概括一类	······165
2.9.4	the wolf/the bottle 等象征一类	167
2.9.5	·10 the 用于指阶级、民族等名词单、复数	170
2,9,5	the + 集合名词单数/个体名词 复数	170
2.9.6	"the + 单数/复数"与无冠词复数	172
2.9.7	public. people, youth 加冠词与否	173
2.9.8	形容词转为指民族名词的几种 情况	175
2.9.9	用于不同所指的指民族 名词	177
2.9.10	the Jew 与 the Jews 指类比较	179
2.9.11-	-14 the poor(属性), the pound(数量),	
	the piano(乐器等)	180

3	.2.7—	8 与 kind, sort 等连用名词前有无冠词222
	3.2.7	a/this kind of 与 of a/this kind 等222
	3.2.8	a saint (sort) of a man 等224
3	.2.9-	11 习惯上略去冠词的几种情况226
	3.2.9	Had ever pupil …? 与 Never did baby …等226
	3.2.10	句子、短语开头冠词的省略227
	3.2.11	标题、电报、提纲、注释等中略去冠词229
第三	三章 村	目仿惯用语中不同冠词形式的不同抽象性230
	3.3.1	惯用语中名词的确定/不确定/概括性230
	3.3.2	have the/a heart 与 take heart 等231
	3.3.3	take the/a part 与 take part 等234
	3.3.4	用一、二种冠词形式构成惯用语的 名词235
	3.3.5	in the place, in place (in a place 非惯用语)237
	3.3.6	of an age, of age (of the age 非惯用语) ······239
第四	四章(又由不同冠 词区别的结构相仿的惯用语
	7	₹例241
:	3.4.1	以一冠词相区别: 理据与习惯241
	3.4.2	由同一动词与同一名词构成的惯用语244
•	3.4.3	由同一介词与同一名词构成的惯用语245
	3.4.4	由同一动词与不同名词构成的惯用语247
	3.4.5	由同一介词与不同名词构成的惯用语248
		由不同动词与同一名词构成的惯用语249
	3.4.7	由不同介词与同一名词构成的惯用语251
		因转作另类名词而改变抽象程度254
第三	五章 "	the/a/an/零+个体名词"惯用语256
	3.5.1	the/a/an/零 + arm/…/bud256
		the/a/an/零+card//cup258
		the/a/an/零 + dog//foot
		the/a/an/零 + hand//lump262
		the/a/an/零 + man//rope265
	3,5,6	the/a/an/零 + sail//street

3.5.7	' the/a/an/零+table/…/wing268
第六章	"the/a/an/零+集合/物质名词"惯用语270
3.6.1	the/a/an/零+family/people/police270
3.6.2	the/a/an/零+air/dust/metal/paper/water271
第七章	"the/a/an/零+抽象名词"惯用语273
3.7.1	the/a/an/零+aid//company273
3.7.2	the/a/an/零 + day//future
3.7.3	the/a/an/零+game//line277
3.7.4	the/a/an/零+manner//opinion281
3.7.5	the/a/an/零+past//rank283
3.7.6	the/a/an/零+secret//thought285
3.7.7	the/a/an/零+time//word288
例句出处	缩略语292

第一编

英语冠词规律用法([),基本用法

第一章 英语冠词的汉语含义

1.1.1 a/an, the 有时分别相当于"一"和"这 (那)"

英语的不定冠词(indefinite article) a, an 与定冠词(definite article) the, 看起来好象很容易掌握。a, an 似乎 相当于汉语"一"、"一个"或"一种"。

A stitch in time saves nine. (谚语) 一针缝得及时, 省得缝九针。

A fall into the pit, a gain in your wit. (谚语) 吃一堑, 长一智。

A foreign language is a weapon in the struggle of life. (Marx) 一种外国语就是生活斗争中的一件武器。

Give him an inch and he'll take an ell. (谚语)(在以元音 开头的词前用 an) (他)得 (一) 寸,进 (一) 尺。

O wild West Wind ...

If I were a dead leaf thou mightest bear;

If I were a swift cloud to fly with thee;

A wave to pant beneath thy power ... (P. B. Shelley)

啊,狂暴的西风……

如果我是一片凋零的落叶随你飘扬;

如果我是一朵轻捷的白云伴你飞翔;

我是任你拍打的、一个跳荡的波浪……

the 似乎相当于汉语"这(个)"、"那(个)"或"这些"、 "那些":

To mention the wolf's name is to see the same, (谚语) 提起这位 (那人),这位 (那人) 就到。说曹操,曹操就到。

I must down to the seas again, to the lonely sea and the sky,

And all I ask is a tall ship and a star to steer her by...
(J. Masefield)

我定要回到那大海中间,

回到那寂寥的海面, 那海空漫漫,

我要的只是一艘高耸的帆船,

一颗星,来指引我乘风扬帆……

O Captain! My Captain! Rise up and hear the bells;

Rise up—for you the flag is flung—for you the bugle trills ... (W. Whitman) (悼念林肯)

啊,船长!我的船长!

起来, 听听这钟声一齐敲响;

起来,这旗帜是为了你在临风飞扬,

这号角是为了你在颤巍巍地高唱……

1.1.2 a/an, the 往往不相当于"一"和"这 (那)"

但是, 在更多的情况下, 英语的定冠词 the 并不相当于汉语的"这"、"那"等:

A straw shows which way the wind blows. (谚语)(相对确指,见2.3.7) 一根小草就能指明风向。见微知著,一叶知秋。(而不说"这风"、"那风")

An apple a day keeps the doctor away. (谚语)(相对确指) 一天吃一个苹果,总也不用上诊所(总也不用请大夫)。(而不

说"这(那)位大夫")

The article is a structure word specifying the noun.(Gordon) (the 类指,见1.7.8;2.9.3) 冠词是明确名词所指的一种结构词。(而不说"这冠词"、"那名词")

上面三句英语中的 the 已不能译作汉语中的"这"、"那",仅剩句中的 a, an 还相当汉语的"一(个、种)"。但在下列例句中, 就连 a, an 也不能译作汉语的"一个"或"一种"了:

Custom is a second nature. (谚语)(指听者未知,见2.3.2; nature 所指事物可数,如 two opposite natures,该事物 在此句中具有听者未知的属性 second) 习惯几乎会变成天性。

There is no pillow so soft as a clear conscience. (谚语) (指听者未知,该事物不可数,因具有听者未知的属性加a,见2.4.5) 问心无愧,安枕无忧。

A new broom sweeps clean. (谚语) (a/an 类指,见1.7.5; 2.8.4: 此处与复数类指意义相同:New brooms sweep clean.) 新官上任三把火。

A cat may look at a king. (谚语) (a/an 类指)陛下是人, 小民也是人。(暗指"我在某一方面不比你差","I'm as good εs you", Brewer's Dictionary of Phrase and Fable)

A philosopher (a/an 类指) is a person (指听者未知,该名词接有定语从句,表示其人具有听者未知的属性) who gives other people advice about troubles he hasn't had. (W. R. Lewis) 所谓哲学家就是没碰到那些难处,而给别人出主意对付难处的人。

1.1.3 冠词无词汇意义,但不可少也不可互换

在把英语译成汉语时,英语中的冠词往往译不出来,但这些失去独立词汇意义的 a/an 与 the 却必不可少,也不能随便 调换。a/an 可换成 the 的情况不多,a/an 或 the 可换成无 冠

词形式(名词改用复数)的情况也很有限。比较下列各句英语 所用冠词与各句的汉语译文:

One chick keeps a/the hen busy. (谚语)(a/an 类指或 the 类指,在此可互换;见1.7.5) 一维也让母鸡忙。一孩也让娘操心。

The onlooker/looker-on (the 类指) sees most of the game. (the 相对确指)(谚语)(属 the 类指的 the onlooker/looker-on 在此不能换作 an onlooker/a looker-on, 但可换为复数类指: The looker-on sees = Lookers-on see; 而属相对确指的 the game 既不能换作 a game, 也不能换作 games, 见 1.7.5; 2.3.7) 旁观者清。

It's not the oath that makes us believe the man, but the man the oath. (Aeschylus, 525—456 B. C.) (相对确指, 不宜换作 a/an ...) 不是发誓使我们相信其人, 而是其人使我们相信发誓。

Don't throw the baby out along with the bathwater, (谚语)(相对确指,不可换作 a/an...) 洗澡水不要了,不能连孩子一起泼掉。摒弃什么,要有分析,不能一概否定。

The year's at the spring, and the day's at the morn. (R. Browning)(相对确指,不可换作 a/an...)一年之计在于春,一日之计在于晨。

1.1.4 "零位冠词"在汉语中无相当的表现法

特别是在以下这样的句子中,除了有 a/an, the 这些在汉语无法直接译出的冠词外,还有些不带冠词的单数 普通 名词 (common nouns),各句中 father, money, night, science 这些无冠词单数形式,与不同冠词表示各种所指一样,表示着另一种所指意义——指综合、概括、抽象的一类事物。这种所谓的零位冠词(zero article)用法,也是汉语所没有的:

The child is father of the man. (Wordsworth) (father,零 位冠词概括指,见 1.7.1; 2.5.4) 从小看大。

Money makes the mare go. (谚语) (money,零位冠词概括指)有钱能使鬼推磨。

Blessed is the person who is too busy to worry in the daytime (the 类指) and too sleepy to worry at night. (Leo Aikman) (at night, 惯用零位冠词, 概括指, 比较 in the night,确指"这天夜深时"或类指"夜深时")白天忙得没工夫愁, 夜晚困得顾不上愁, 这才是有福之人啊!

There is no royal road to science, and only those who do not dread the fatiguing climb (确指,后带定语限定其属某种确定事物) of its steep paths have a chance (不确指,后带定语,为具一定联系的诸事物之一) of gaining its luminous summits. (Marx) (science,零位冠词,概括指)探索科学是没有坦荡大道可走的,只有在崎岖山径上不畏劳苦、奋勇攀登的人们,才有希望到达科学的光辉顶峰。

可见,英语冠词有许多用法,有些用法在汉语中没有与其相当的现成解释。我们对这些用法作一番逐步深入、全面系统的研究,是很有意义的。

第二章 冠词 a/an, the 的几种读音

1.2.1 a/an 的轻读读音

不定冠词 a 用于以辅音开头的词前,其另一形式 an 用于以元音开头的词前。通常不重读, a 读作 [ə], an 读作 [ən]。注意 a/an 的分用是根据其后词头是否读作元音,而不是根据 其后词头是否为书面上的"元音字母":

A European [ə 'juərə'pi:ən] musician served them as a

one-man [ə ˈwʌnˈmæn] band. (冠词后名词词组开头, 在书面上为元音字母,但读音为辅音)一名欧洲乐师权作他们的单人乐队。

An uncle [ən 'Aŋkl] of mine is a unionist [ə 'juːnjənist]. (同是字母 u, 在前一名词头读元音,在后一名词头读成辅音加元音) 我的一个叔叔是个工会会员。

She stamped out an SOS [ən 'es'əu'es] in the snow. (缩略词书面上虽为辅音字头开头,但读音为元音字母开头) 她在雪地上踩出一个 SOS 呼救信号。

One is a BA [ə 'biː'ei]. another is an MA [ən 'em'ei]. and a third is an RA [ən 'aː'rei]. (仅 BA 以辅音开头,BA: Bachelor of Arts; MA: Master of Arts; RA: Royal Academician) 其中一个是文学学士,另有一个是文学 硕士,还有一个是皇家艺术学院院士。

While giving us a history [ə 'histəri] lesson an hour [ən-'auə] ago, he recommended a historical [ə his'tərikəl] novel (非重读 h 音 节 前, 旧时用 an: an historical novel) 他在一个小时前给我们上历史课时,推荐了一本历史小说。

Then she wrapped up an orange in an apron. 然后她用一块围裙包起一个橘子。(历史上原为 a norange, a napron, 后因 n 被误归冠词,造成了 orange, apron 的现在词形。比较: napkin "餐巾", nappy "尿布",其中 nap-为"一块布",-kin,-y与-ron 皆指小后缀)

1.2.2 a/an 要重读的情况

当 a/an 在句中需要重读时,a 要读作 [ei], an 要读作[æn]。 有时, 重读 a/an 是为了加强对比:

She is always confusing "a"[ei] and/with "an"[æn]. 她总是把a和an混淆起来。

I asked you to get me 'a [ei] hat and 'an [æn] umbrella, not necessarily 'his hat and 'his umbrella. 我是让你给我拿随便一顶帽子和随便一把雨伞,不一定是他的帽子。和他的雨伞。

还有时, 重读是为了强调 a/an 本身或强调以它 开头的 整个名词词组:

With indefinite specific reference, singular count nouns take the indefinite article 'a(n) [ei]/[æn]: (GCE) 指不确定的某个特殊事物时,单数可数名词加不定冠词a或an。

Now you have all got to make 'A [ei] 'REAL 'EFFORT! (Swan) 现在你们可都得真地卖卖力气了!

1.2.3 the 的轻读读音

定冠词 the 通常也不重读,它在辅 音 前 读 [ðə] 或 [ð],在 元音前读作 [ði]。注意这一区分也是根据其后词头的读音,不 管词头是否为元音字母:

I simply can't tell the one [ðə 'wʌn] from the other [ði 'ʌðə]. 这两个,我就是分辨不清。

The uncle [ði 'ʌŋkl] has just sent the niece a birthday gift over from the United States [ðə ju'naitid 'steits]. 这位 叔叔刚刚从美国给他的侄女寄来一件生日礼物。

The horse [ðə 'hɔːs] is the question of the hour [ði 'auə]. 当前的问题是怎样弄到这匹马。

He has been long in the service of the CIA [ðə ˈsiːˈaiˈei], and she in the service of the FBI [ði ˈefˈbiːˈai]. (CIA: Central Intelligence Agency; FBI: Federal Bureau of Investigation) 他为美国中央情报局工作已经很久,她为美国联邦调查局工作也已经很久。

1.2.4 the 要重读的情况

每当 the 在句中需要重读时,都读作 [ði:]或 [ði]。

有时, 重读 the 是为了加强对比:

Here the definite article "the"[ði:] ought to be used instead of the indefinite article "a"[ei]. 这里应该用定冠词the,不应该用不定冠词 a。

I didn't want 'the [ði(:)] English book, but just 'an [een] English book. 我不是一定要这本英语书,我要的只是随便一本英语书。

重读的 the 更常常加于名词或代词前,强调该事物的特殊针对性,有"恰好的"、"最好的"、"适当的"、"正确的"、"典型的"、"重要的"、"真正的"等意义:

You said your key was missing. Is 'this 'the [ði(:)] one? 你说你的钥匙丢了。这个是不是恰好是你的?

'This is 'the [ði(:)] drink for hot weather. 这才是热天喝的饮料呢!

'That's 'the [ði(:)] thing! 这样正对!

'That's 'the [di(:)] word to be used. 用这个词就正合适。

'She was 'the [oi(:)] landlady (the typical landlady).

(Zandvoort) 她才是旧日的典型女房东呢!

'He is 'the [di(:)] pianist of the day. (Curme) 他才是当代的钢琴大师呢!

'Chelsea is 'the [ði(:)] place for young people. (UGE) (伦敦西南的) 车尔西,那才是年轻人的好去处呢!

The demonstration will be 'the [ði(:)] event this week. (GCE) 这次示威游行将是本周的头等大事。

There are teachers in plenty, but 'the [ði(:)] teacher does not exist. (井上义昌《英米语用法辞典》)教师多得很,但是真正 (循循善诱) 的教师却一个没有。

专有名词,如人名,一般不加冠词,但如要强调其特殊针对性,表示"就是所说的那位××"、"就是那著名的××"之类意义时,也常常加用重读的 the (参见 2.1.4);

Are you 'the [ði(:)] Mr Johnson? (UGE) 您就是那大名 鼎鼎的约翰逊先生吗?

"This is Miss Garbo."—"Not 'the [ði(:)] Miss Garbo?" (Swan) "这一位是嘉尔伯小姐。"——"不是那位远近闻名的嘉尔伯小姐吗?"

第三章 a/an, the 的来源、本义与基本用法

1.3.1-2 the与 a/an 的来源

1.3.1 the 来自指示代词

前面所谈重读定冠词 the 的意义, 正反映了它在历史上变成定冠词以前那指示代词的意义:

Your key missing again? Is this 'the [ði(:)] (that) one? 你的钥匙又找不着了? 这是那把吗?

Are you 'the [ði(:)] (that famous) Mr Johnson? 您就是那位著名的约翰逊先生吗?

the 源出古英语指示代词 sē (其阳性单数主格 形式): "那个",其复数形式为 tha: "那些"。the 保留了 sē 的元音,却受该词其他性、数、格形式开头辅音的影响,把原来的 s-换为 th-。古英语指示代词 sē 的大部分性、数、格形式是以 th-开头的:

	单数阳性	单数中性	单数阴性	复数
主 格	sē	thæt	sēo	tha
生 格 (所有格)	th	æs	thære	thara

(与格、对格、造格略;其中性单数主格 thæt 后来演 化为现代英语的指示代词 that)

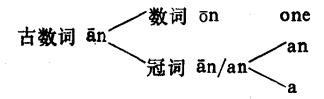
1.3.2 a 为 an 之弱化变形; an 来自数词

由于不定冠词 a 比 an 用得更为频繁, 好象 an 是由 a 加上字母 n 构成的。历史事实恰恰相反。不定冠词的来源是 古英语的数词 ān: "一",ān 失去长音符号,成为非重读的不定冠词 an,先是用于所有可数名词单数形式前面(不论其为元音或辅音开头)。后来 an 进一步弱化,才在以辅音开头的词前失去了 n。

公元 1611 年英国国王詹姆士一世"钦定"的圣经英译本中 有这样的一句:

Children are an heritage of the Lord. 儿童是上帝赐予我们的财产。(那时辅音前还用 an)

也正是古英语这个数词 ān 另外 又演 化出现代英语的数词one:



1.3.3—5 one 与 a/an 的不同

1.3.3 数词性质与指不确定、指类属性质

不定冠词虽然来自古英语数词, 但 a/an 作为 冠词, 已 大

大减弱甚至失去了表示数目 one 的意义,成为指示事物不确定性或仅指其所属类别的结构词(或称虚词)。比较下面二表中左右两栏:

one+名词,指确定或不确 定事物

One day/The other day I called on her. 有一天我去看望了她(对说话人是确定的一天)。

One day/Some day/One of these (fine) days I'll call on her. 某一天/以后某天/最近某天我要去看望她。(不确定)

He awoke one fine morning to find himself famous (became famous overnight). 他一觉醒来(一夜之间)就出了名。(确定)

One fine day/morning you'll be sorry. 你早晚会后悔的。 (不确定)

At one time all systems of knowledge were embraced under the term of "philosophy". 过去有个时期,所有知识部门都被囊括在"哲学"一语之内。

a/an+名词,指不确定事物

Please name a day. 请指 定一个日子。

I never had a day at school in my whole life. 我这一辈子从来没上过一天学。

It often happens that a balmy morning passes into a chilly afternoon. 一个温和的上午常常转为一个寒冷的下午。

I hope we'll have a fine day. 我希望有个好天。

It is possible for a model to be unemployed for weeks at a time. 一个模特儿可能一连几个星期没人雇用。

(I came across her one day last autumn. I came across her on a fine autumn day. 可见 one day 与 a ... day 皆可

指说话人已确知之日,但听话人未知因而不确定之日;但对于各方都是完全不确定的日子,只用 a (...) day 表示,如以上右栏各例)

one + 名词,强调"一",不是"二"、"三"等

One shotgun is no good.

一只猎枪不够用。

One word is too often profaned for me to profane it.
(Shelley) 一个字被反复糟塌,我不能再来亵渎它。

Just one minute more. 再等一分钟。(无需两分)

One day in time is lost on crossing 180° longitude westward. 向西越过 180° 经度线时,就会丢掉日历上的一天。

He had been at college more than one year, maybe two years. 他上大学已不止一年,可能两年了。

They were sold by the hundred, and I bought only one hundred. 这些(货物)是论百卖的,于是我只买了一百。

At one stroke he severed

a/an+名词,强调事物所 属类别

A shotgun is no good. 猎枪不顶用。

In a word/In short/In brief, he has fallen in love with her. 一句话/简单说吧/简而言之,他爱上她了。

Just a minute. 只等一分钟。(不是一刻钟)

Rome was not built in a day. (谚语)(but through centuries) 罗马城不是一天完工的。伟业得完成,绝非一日功。

It'll take us more than a year (maybe fifteen months) to finish the work. 完成这一工作需要一年多(也许15个月)时间。

I'm a hundred percent sure. 我有百分之百的把握。

I need only six more to have a (full) hundred. 我只 差六个就够一百了。

He made a fortune at a

the head from the body. 他一 | stroke. 他一举致富。("一举" 下子就让脑袋和身子分家了。

He knocked them both down at/with one blow. 一下子把两人都打倒了。("一 下"与"二人"对比)

They were in two minds last night, but now they are of one mind. 昨晚他们还有 分歧,现在意见一致了。

是比喻,并非计算次数)

He knocked the bastard down at/with a blow. 下子就把那个坏蛋打倒在地

They are all of a/one mind. 他们全体是一致的意见。

比较惯用 of a/an 强调类属的短语:

年龄

of a feather 种羽毛

of a make 同一处制造的 of a piece 同一性质的 of a size 同样大小 of a type 同一类型

of an age (两人以上) 同一 of a fashion (两物以上) 同 一式样

(两鸟以上) 同 of a length 同一长度

of a nation 同一民族 of a shape 同一形状 of a species 同一品种 of a kind/sort 同属一种

(但 Buy a dress of a fashion you like. 买件你喜欢那 样式的衣服。 This box will make a table of a kind. 子可以当桌子。 He could speak English of a sort. 他能勉 强说点英语。)

1.3.4 惯用语中二者不可互换

大量惯用语中a/an 不可换作 one, 也有少数惯用 语 中 用 one, 而不用 a/an:

So we occupied the port without striking a blow. 于是我 们兵不血刃地顺利占领了港口。

Everything went off without a hitch. 一切进展顺利。

I've worked ten hours at a stretch. 我一连气干了十个小时。

She's read the book through at a sitting. 她一气看完了这本书。

He finished the work at one go. 他一口气把活干完了。 They were perished to a man. 他们全部遇难。

They approved of it as one man. 他们一致赞同此事。

A bird in the hand is worth two in the wood. (谚语)
—乌在手心,顶得二乌在树林。

One today is worth two tomorrows. 今天一天顶两个明天。

1.3.5 二者与数词连用的不同

表示百、千等整数用 a 或 one: It has a/one hundred degrees between the boiling and the freezing points. 它的 沸点与冰点之间整 有100℃。

百、千带零的准确数字用 one ...: one hundred and eight generals 108 将; one thousand and one nights 1001 夜

指大约的数量用 a hundred/ thousand 等: about a hundred, a thousand or so, in a hundred and one ways ("千方百计") a hundred/thousand and one things ("千头万绪");或用 hundreds/thousands of ...

The office isn't a hundred miles away. 办公室不远。

It's a risk of a thousand to one in my favor. (NDEC) 这次冒险非常可能使我获利。

A thousand thanks. 多谢, 多谢。

She's a devoted housemaid—plainly a girl in a thousand. 她是个忠实的女仆——真是个百里挑一的姑娘。

an hour or two, a day or two 有大约之意, 而 one or two hours/days 非 "一"即"二"。a mile and a half = one and a half miles 皆为 "1.5 英里"。

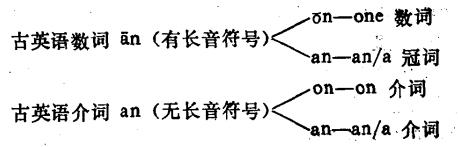
one 仅在表示"某个"时(属不定代词而非数词)才相当a/an: One/A Mr Jones asked to see you. 有个琼斯先生要见您。

1.3.6-7 a/an, the 用于指单位名词

1.3.6 a/an ("每") 原属介词

在 an apple a day 或 ten miles an hour 这类结构后边 a day, an hour 中的 a/an 好象也是表示"一",但实际上 其确切意义是"每",属于另一种用法。

在历史上,这表示"每"的 a/an 原来并非由数词"一"演化而来的不定冠词。象拉丁语的 per(本义 through,转义 for)一样,英语的"每"一a/an一原来也是介词。它源出古英语的介词 an,该介词后另外演化为现代英语的介词 on。比较,



较详尽的词典,如 WNCD, WNWD 等仍 把 作 "每"解的 a/an 注为介词。但我认为,就其限于引导比例单位的 用 法来说,也不妨把它视为冠词,ALD 与 LDCE 二词典就已这样做了。

1.3.7 the 表示"每"或"论"

有趣的是定冠词 the 也用于类似结构,表示"每",不过定 冠词引导单位名称另有一义"论"。 Apples are sold by the pound. 苹果论磅卖。(表示"论"不用 a/an)

What's the price a/the pound? 每磅售价多少钱? How much a/the pound is it? 多少钱 1 (每)磅? Sixpence a/the pound. 6 便士 1 磅。

Oranges sell at three mao a/the jin. 橘子3角1斤。

但用 a/an 表示"每" 更为普通:

How much is boarding and lodging a day? 每天膳宿费 多少钱?

What's it a dozen/meter/packet/pound? 多少钱 1 打/1 米/1 包/1 磅?

Only a shilling a dozen. 每打只卖1先令。

We've got some at two shillings a pound. (张道真等《实用英语会话》)我们有一些每磅卖两先令。

表示"每"的 a/an 不只用于与售价联系的单位,而且用于与速度、频度等各种度量相联系的单位。

My car does about thirty miles a/per gallon. 我的 小汽车每加仑汽油跑 30 哩左右。

We drove at (a speed of) forty kilometres an/per hour. 我们开车的速度是每小时 40 公里。

Light travels at 300,000 kilometers a/per second. 光速为每秒30万公里。

We go to London twice (in) a month. (in 可有可无,最好不用,因 a 已属介词用法)我们每月去伦敦 2 次。

one 则从无介词性质: How much is one meter of this cloth? 这种布多少钱 1 米?

而在 How much is this cloth a/per meter? 旬中 a 联系 cloth 与 meter 二名词,属介词用法。

在 by, in, to 等引导的介词短语中常用 the 表示"论"或

"每"。

We're paid by the day, and they by the piece. 我们拿日工资,他们拿计件工资(我们论天,他们论件)。

The mails come three times in the day (three times a day). 每天来三次邮件。

His car does about thirty-five miles to the gallon(thirty-five miles a/per gallon). 他的小汽车每加仑汽油跑30 哩 左右。

1.3.8—10 a/an, the 的基本用法

1.3.8 "不确指"与"确指"

因 a/an 与 the 分别源出数词与指示代词,故其基本 意义分别是:指"一类事物中不确定的一个"和指"一类事物中确定的某个、某些、某种"。

其中, a/an 原只用于可数名词单数。the 则兼用于可数名词单、复数以及不可数名词:

He found the car going for a song/an old song and bought it. (LDCE) (a用于 song, an 用于 old song, 可数名词单数) (比喻说法:"他发现那小汽车只要谁唱个歌/唱个老歌就给谁,于是……") 他发现那小汽车卖得非常便宜,就买下来了。

I like the music of the swan song, but not the words. (the 用于 song, words 可数名词单、复数, music 不可数名词)我喜欢这首天鹅之歌的音乐, 但我不喜欢这歌词。

I'm devoted to music for the love of it. (the 用于 love, 不可数名词) 我献身于音乐是为了我对音乐的热爱。

a/an 只能用来指单数的不确定事物("一个"),那么如果要指复数的不确定事物("一些")又怎么办呢?可数名词复数形式不加冠词就可以指复数不确定事物。"a/an+单数名词"与"无冠词复数名词"同属"不确指":

Don't you like folk songs? (songs,复数,具不确定性)你是喜欢民歌的吧,是不是?

Play us a folk song. (a song,单数,同样具不确定性)给我们演奏一首民歌吧!

What I like best is *The Song of Songs* (in the Bible). (the song,确定的那只歌, songs,不确定的许多歌) 我最喜欢的是(圣经中的)"歌中之歌"(《雅歌》)。

因而,"the+名词(单、复)"、"a/an+名词(单)"及"无冠词复数名词"分属两种所指:

	确 指 指一类事物中确定的	•	确 指 确定的一个、一些
	某个、某些、某种 the + 名词	a/an+单数名词	无冠词复数名词
	the car(s)	a car	cars
可数名词	the song(s)	a song an old song	songs
	the word(s)	a word	words
	the love		
不可数名词	the music		

这是 a/an 与 the 最基本的用法。

1.3.9 a/an 用于"指听者未知"

但是, a/an 还有另外一种基本用法。"a/an+名词"所表示的一个,可能对任何人都是不确定的,例如"(谁唱)一个歌(就给谁……)",但是,也可能只是对听话人是不明确的,因为他、她(们)还不知道这一事物,例如下面一段文字中的 a song:

Now I'll tell you what. I asked him to set a song to music—a song I had written the previous night. He did that

in a little while, and then sang me the song ... (在这三句话中,说话人第一次所谈 a song 对自己虽是已知确定的 那个歌,对听话人还是未知的"一个"歌; a little while 也只是对听者是未知的事物: new to the hearer。但是,到谈最后一句话sang me the song 时,那个歌前已提过,就对听话人也是已知确定的歌了。)现在我来告诉你实际情况。我请他给一首歌谱曲,一首我前一天晚上写的歌词。他一会儿就谱好了,并给我唱了这首歌……

"不确指"与"指听者未知",实际上是 不定 冠词 a/an 的两种不同用法。"听者未知"意味着"说者已知",并不等于完全不确定。可比较:

We know a policeman by the uniform he wears. (a policeman, 不确指) 我们从穿制服就可以知道那是个警察。

I know of a plainclothes policeman who is certainly competent to help you. (a plainclothes policeman, 说者已知,此处指听者未知) 我知道有个便衣警察,他一定有能力帮你的忙。

We usually go to church of a Sunday. (不确指) 我们经常在星期日去教堂作礼拜。

She died of a Monday. (WNCD) (指听者未知) 她是在一个星期一那天死去的。

"不确指"名词可带定语,该定语仅是限制一下"不确指"的范围。而指"听者未知"的名词如带定语,则是表示该事物具听者不明确的属性,因而该事物属于"听者未知"的一个。比较:

"I'd like to buy a white shirt." (不确指)"我想买一件白衬衣。"—"Here is one in your size. This is a very fine shirt." (指听者未知)"这件是您那么大号的。这件衬衣质量很好"。

不仅表示具体东西的个体名词是可数的, 抽象名词也有一

部分是可数的,集合名词也是有一部分为可数名词。这几种可数名词加a/an,可能属于"不确指",也可能属于"指听者未知"。

"不确指". An old dog will learn no new tricks, much less will an old dancer. And a singer is likely to draw better. (个体名词) 老狗学不了新把戏,老舞蹈演员 更不行了。而且歌唱演员可能会吸引更多的听众。

Now what we need is a picked band to accompany her. (集合名词) 现在我们需要的是个精选的乐队给她伴奏。

I don't think that's something to make a song about. (抽象名词)(比喻说法:"我想为了这回事不需要编个歌。") 我看这点事不值得一提。

指听者未知: There appeared on the stage a new singer, an opera singer. (个体名词) 一位新歌手、歌剧演员,出现在舞台上。

Softly and delicately, a color-boys band began playing. (集合名词) 一个黑人乐队,轻轻地、柔和地开始演奏了。

A popular song rang out loud and clear. (抽象名词) 一首流行歌嘹亮、清晰地响彻大厅。

前节所讲能用于"不确指"的可数名词无冠词复数,同样也能用于"指听者未知"。

A hen sits on eggs. (A hen, eggs, 不确指) 母鸡孵蛋。
Hens sit on eggs. (Hens 也不确指) 母鸡(一般都)孵蛋。
There is a hen there that has just begun sitting on eggs
I bought from the poultry farm. (a hen, eggs, 指听者未知)
那里有只母鸡,刚开始孵我从家禽饲养场买来的蛋。

1.3.10 a/an, the 基本用法小结

至此,可以把 a/an 与 the 的基本用法先归纳如下:

确 指 一类中确定的某 个、某些、某种	不 ず 一类中不确定	指 的一个、一些	(概括指)
the+名词(单、复)	a/an + 名词 (单)	无冠词复数名词	(零位冠词)
the egg(s) the song(s)	an egg a song	eggs songs	
the love 不可数 the music 名词	·		(love, music)1
指 已 知 指 听 者 未 知 (意义、形式同上) 听者尚不明确的一个、一些 (形式同			
	an egg(I bought) a song(rang out) (a love) ²	eggs (I bought) songs (were sung)	

^{1.} 无冠词不可数抽象名词并非一类中的一个、一些或一种, 不属 "不确指", 而属"概括指",如 Music is the food of love.(音乐是爱情的食粮。)详见 1.7.1; 2.5.4。

1.3.11 冠词名称 article 的来源

冠词的英语名称 article 是 13 世纪才从法语借用到 英语中来的(WNNCD)。源出古英语(公元七世纪——1100 年的英语) 数词与指示代词的 an 与 the 这时已逐渐专用作冠词,时间 约为中古英语 (1100 年~1500 年的英语) 中期。

古拉丁语并没有冠词。属拉丁语族、产生稍晚的法语、西班牙语、意大利语就有了不定冠词与定冠词,而且两种冠词都有性别和单、复数形式,分别用于不同性、数的名词。与英语同属日耳曼语族的德语中,冠词不仅有性、数形式,还随名词一

^{2.} a/an 加于不可数名词"指听者未知",属其扩展用法,见 1.5.4; 2.4.3 - 2.4.9。

起发生四种格的变化。西方主要语言中,只有俄语没有冠词。

article 一词法语原义为"小接头"、"小关节";该法语词又来自拉丁语,其中 arti-原义 joint,"接头",-cle 原为指小后缀。因而,该词亦有"物件"、"项目"、"条款"、"文章"等词义。名词 art ("艺术") 是从动词词干 ar-演变而来, ar-原义是"接上"、"安装"。

另外可与 particle 一词 做 比 较, 其 中 parti- 为 "部 分", -cle 为指小后缀, 因而该词有"小品词"、"微粒"、"粒 子"等词义。

第四章 名词类别与冠词对 名词的附加性质

1.4.1 名词类别与抽象化程度的差别

我们讨论不定冠词与定冠词的基本用法,提到名词有"可数名词"与"不可数名词"之分。但这可数、不可数两大类加在一起并不是名词的全部。可数与否是对""普通名词"而言的,普通名词是人们给予一类一类事物的名称。与普通名词相对的,是"专有名词",即人们给予某一事物的专用名称,专有名词不存在计数问题。

Mount Tai: "泰山",就没有可数不可数的问题;而 rock 指 "岩块"时为可数名词,指 "岩石"时为不可数名词, soil则主要用作不可数名词 ("土壤")。

人们在用专有名词命名某人、某地或某一事物时,常常是抽取了它的特征或借用了有关事物的特征,但既已用作专有名词,该词即使原来有些抽象、概括意义,那些意义也都消失于对具体、独特事物的指称中了。例如,在 I found Longman a short man. 句中、无冠词,开头大写的 Longman 已没有

long 的抽象性质, 仅指一姓"朗曼"之人, 而带冠词 a 的 short man 则概括了一类具有 short 抽象性质的人, "小个子(男人)"。

与专有名词不同,一个普通名词是把事物归为一类,从概括化、抽象化中得出的一个名称。不同的概括、抽象程度与不同的具体应用,就使各种普通名词分别带上了 a/an, the 等冠词形式。例如,人们看到自家的一个、两个及别家许多孩子,认识到孩子这一类人的抽象属性,才有了 children, the children, a child, the child 的说法;人们看到许多父母同孩子一起生活,认识到这些小集体的共同性质,才概括地称之为families, the families, 或 a family, the family;人们经常感受到对孩子的疼爱,才给这不能直接看到的感情某种名称。love, the love, affection, the affection等。

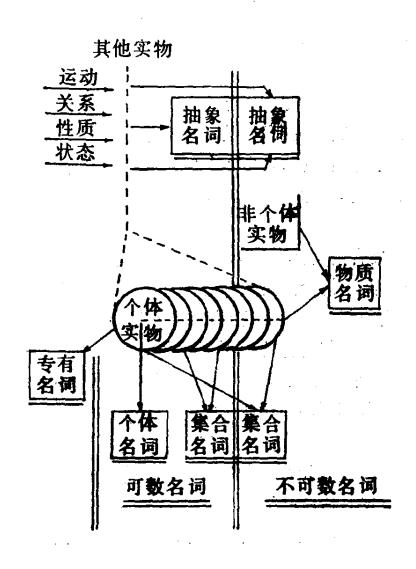
因此,名词首先区分为专有名词 (proper nouns) 与普通名词(common nouns)两大类,而普通名词进一步分出的类别,正是反映了概括化、抽象化的程度差别:

- 1) 个体名词(individual nouns) 一类个别 实物的 名称, 皆可数名词:a bag, a pot, an engine, a policeman(袋、罐子、 发动机、警察)。
- 2) 集合名词(collective nouns) 由个体集合而成的实物的名称。其中指由同类实物的一部分组成的集合体的为可数名词,如由一部分人组成的 a family (家庭)。指由同类实物的全部组成的整类集合体的为不可数名词,如 mankind (the human race) (人类) 以及 (the) baggage/pottery/machinery/police/furniture/clothing/fruit (行李、陶器、机器、警察、家具、衣服、水果)。
- 3)物质名词(material nouns)构成一切个体与非个体实物的物质按其性质归类的名称,都是不可数名词: (the) leatherette/clay/steel/wood/cloth/juice (人造革,粘土,钢,木头,布,果汁)。

4) 抽象名词(abstract nouns) 实物的运动、关系、性质、状态等抽象事物的名称。其中与特定实物有联系因而是个别抽象事物的名称为可数名调: a job (一种或一时的运动状态), a name (命名的结果, 指称的标志), a technique (一种性能) ("活计", "名字", "技术")。与一般实物有联系因而是综合的抽象事物的名称的, 为不可数名词, work/engineering/technology/generalization (工作、工程学、技术、概括)。

1.4.2 名词类别示意图

根据上述名词分类可归纳为下图(从个体实物出发):



1.4.3 可兼屬不同类别的名词

许多名词可改变词义的概括、抽象程度,用作不同类别的名词(下列名词类别按从特殊到一般、从个别与具体到综合与 扩象的顺序,普通名词中可数名词前加 a/an,不可数 名词 前 加带括号的 the)。

专有名词 (试看可兼属哪类名词)

Mercury 墨丘利 (罗马神话中的商神, 信使神)

Snow 斯诺 (美国作家) Fox 福克斯 (美国小说家)

Panama 巴拿马

Champagne 香槟(法国地区名)

个体名词(试看可兼属哪类名词,下同)

a band 带子

a beauty 美人

a capital 首都

a cloth 台布

a fox 狐狸

a glass 玻璃杯

a hair (一根)头发;毛

an iron 熨斗

a love 可爱的人

a panama 巴拿马草帽

a paper 论文。考卷

a post 柱子

a wood 树林

a youth 男青年

集合名词

a band 队,乐队

a class 班,阶级

(the) hair (全部) 头发

(the) post 邮件

(the) youth (男、女) 青年

物质名词

(the) champaigne 香槟酒

(the) cloth 布

(the) glass 玻璃

(the) iron 铁

(the) mercury 水银

(the) paper 纸

(the) snow 雪

(the) wood 木头

抽象名词

a class 种类

a post 职位

(the) beauty 美

(the) capital 资本

1.4.4 冠词为附于名词的标志

正象普通名词是在抽象化认识过程中产生的那样,代词也是通过抽象化得来的。任何个别事物,只就其单一性来看,都可以称之为: one, the one; 任何人都把自己称作 I, me, 把自己的什么人、东西称作 my ..., mine; 凡相对较近与较远的事物都称之为 this, that。除人称代词等少数代词 只作名词性成分,代词一般都是既能作名词性成分,又能加在名词前作其定语:

The game is mine. (表语,名词性成分)我赢了。

That's it. (主语,名词性成分)这就行了。

At that point my man came back. (二定语) 正 当 这 时, 我丈夫回来了。

在已有 my, that 等代词作定语的名词前不再使用冠词,因而有人把这些代词叫做"限定词" (determiners)。它们有同冠词相仿的限定名词所指事物的作用。比较:

in a way 在某方面 in the way 挡道,碍事 by the way 在路旁;顺便说 on the way 在途中 Which way? 哪条路? This way 这条路,走这边。 on my way home 我回家 find some way or other 想 路上 个办法

in many ways 在许多方面 any way 无论如何 in no way 无论如何也不 not in any way 无论如何 也不

either way 两条路都可以 in every way 在各个方面都根据这种相仿功能,冠词也被归于"限定词"之列。但我们觉得,代词与冠词构成名词词组在结构功能与限定作用上的类同固然应该指出,而二者限定性质的截然不同更 有 必 要 辨

明。

the 与 a/an 由历史上的重读指示代词、数词(该数词亦为不定代词)变为非重读的冠词,其词汇意义已趋于虚化: 冠词不能脱离名词独立表达任何概念,本身已不是句中成分,对名词的限定实际只是起肯定或否定其确定性的正、反标志作用。因其与词形变化(如加词尾)及加助动词(如 do 加 作 is doing)的标志性质相当,我们说冠词属于语法手段——不同于代词加在名词前是词汇手段。所有代词对名词的限定,都以其独立词汇意义加在名词前,代词是句中成分,一般也能单独使用,能回答 Whose? Which? How many?等问题。Which way?可答道 That way. 或 The other way. 但不能只说 The way. 这仅带定冠词的名词还需定语限定: The way (that/by which) I came. ("哪条道?","那条。""另外一条。""我来的那条。"汉语相当 that 的为重读的"那(条)",相当 the 的为轻读的"那":"……的那条"。)

1.4.5 冠词的虚词性质

应该明确,冠词是由实词(notional words)虚化而来的虚词(form words)。实词表示事物(包括运动、属性、状态、特征)本身,能独立担任句中成分。虚词表示事物间几个方面的关系,不能独立担任句中成分。

实词能用来回答特殊问句,虚词则不能。例如对 Too much water drowned the miller. (靠河水推磨的磨坊发大水,淹死了磨倌。好事过分也会成坏事。)一句,可问答道:"What?"—"Water." "How much water?"—"Too much." "What did it do?"—"Drowned the miller." "Who/Whom did it drown?"—"The miller." 对于 Smooth water runs deep. (静水流深。寡言者谋略多。)一句可以问: How does smooth water run?回答是 Deep. 回答问题的是可任句中主语、谓语、宾语、定

语、状语等各种成分的名词、代词、动词、形容词、副词等实 词。

实词中有五种词类,词数是无限的,属所谓开放类属词目 (open-class items).

1) 名词:

man 男人

diehard 死硬派

ease 安逸、舒服

disease 病 (不舒服)

like, the like 同样的人或 sort 种类

物

2) 形容词。

manly 男子气概的

manned 载人的

easy 容易的

diseased 患病的

like 相象的

likely 可能的

hard 硬的

sortable 可分类的

3) 数词:

one

ten +

4) 动词:

man 配备人员 (Man the guns! 上炮位!)

harden (使) 变硬

ease 使舒适

sort 把·····分类

like 喜欢

(I never liked his like. 我从来不喜欢他这样的人。)

5) 副词:

manly 男子气概地

easily 容易地

hard 努力

hardly 几乎不

sorta (sort of) 有几分

likely 很可能

(He'll very likely come right away. 句中 likely 为副词, "他可能马上就到。"而 He's likely to come. 中 likely 为形 容词。可见区分词类的根据,是词在句中的作用。)

实词中只有代词一种词类,词数是有限的,属所谓封闭系

统词目(closed-system items)。因为代词表示最抽象的关系,一切事物及属性都不出这几种关系:人称、指示、指量(much, little). 疑问、不定(any, each)等。

而所有的虚词,词数都有限,属封闭系统词目,因虚词也表示一些方面的高度抽象关系。除冠词外,属于虚词的词类有:

- 1) 助动词:be(+doing), have(+done), will(+ be doing等)
 - 2) 连词 and, but, for (+后一并列句)
- 3) 介词:at, of, for (+名词/代词), like (+名词/代词; 历史上 "形容词+介词"的 like to 后失去 to, 使 like 起了介词作用)

虚词词数有限,而使用特别频繁,其丰富的用法,是正确的、地道英语的精髓。为数最少的冠词,尤其如此。

第五章 "独指"、"确指"、"不确指" 与"指听者未知"

1.5.1-3 "独指"形式与其他所指形式的比较

1.5.1 最常见的名词四种所指

在定冠词与不定冠词分别表示"确指"与"不确指"两种最基本的用法之外,我们已提到不定冠词 a/an "指听者未知"的另一基本用法,并且随即指出:不带冠词的名词复数形式,也与"a/an+名词单数"同样,或属不确指,或属"指听者未知"(1.3.9)。

现在,全面讨论了名词类别 (第四章)之后,我们看到,还有一种一般不带冠词的名词,即专有名词。专有名词虽也是不带冠词或者说无冠词,但其所指显然不是"不确指"或"指

听者未知"。专有名词指单独的事物,并非一类事物名称用于一类中的某个或一个。专有名词属于"独指"。

从独指 (unique reference) 到确指 (definite reference),再到不确指 (indefinite reference)与"指听者未知"(new-to-hearer reference—the hearer's indefinite reference),也是在从特殊向一般过渡。这四种所指就是冠词用与不用中最常见的四种名词实指意义,除此之外,就是性质上与这四种所指有所不同的几种"类指"了,包括属于"类指"的"概括指"(见1.7.1)。

1.5.2 无冠词"独指"不同于无冠词复数所指

为了辨别不带冠词的"独指"与不带冠词的复数"不确指"及"指听者未知"所具不同性质,我们比较以下例句中的几个无冠词名词。

On my way to Oxford, again and again I heard oxen lowing at fords. (Oxford, 地名, 书面开头大写, 表明其"独指"意义; oxen 与 fords, 普通名词, 其复数形式表明: 名词指听者未知的事物) 在我去牛津的路上, 在几处涉水过河的地方一再听到牛叫。

Silly girl, she can't tell oxen from buffaloes. (oxen 与 buffaloes 的复数形式在此表明二名词指各该类中不确定的事物) 傻孩子, 她分不清牛和水牛。

1.5.3 带 the "独指"不同于带 the "确指"

专有名词,如人名、地名等,一般多不带冠词。但少数专有名词习惯上要加定冠词 the,如江、河、海洋的名称,船名、宫殿名、复数的姓名或地名等 (详见 2.2.4~2.2.5)。这时,在专有名词前的 the 表示独指,书面上专有名词开头大写帮助把独指与其他所指区别开来。

复数姓名、地名虽然指的不是单独一个人、一座山、一个

岛屿等,但仍是单独一组人、单独一条山脉、单独一片 群岛等,所以仍属于独指。如带 the 的姓氏复数形式是在复数姓名中最常用的,the Fords (译作"福特……",可指福特全家、福特夫妇、福特父子或父女、福特母子或母女、福特兄弟或包括姐妹,或任何两个以上福特家庭以及家族的成员);复数地名,如 the Netherlands 要带 the,而同指"荷兰",Holland 却不带 the,the Philippines 原指菲律宾群岛,后兼指菲律宾国家。

带 the 的独指还用于一些独有的事物,如 the sun, the moon, the earth (有时写作 the Earth), the sky, the worldithe heavens (书面语,指天空,即 the sky), the heaven 或 the Heaven (天堂)等。表示这些人人尽知的自然界独有事物的名词,开头多不大写。

一些带 the 的独指用法,是从 the 的确指用法(指一类中确定的某个或某些)中扩展出来的。

比较下列不带或带 the 的"独指"名词及带 the 的 确 指名词 (后者改为带 a/an 即不确指或指听者未知):

Smith (姓) 史密斯 Queen Elizabeth 伊丽莎白女王

Jolmo Lungma 珠穆朗玛峰 Everest 埃弗勒斯 (即珠穆朗玛) 峰 Siberia 西伯利亚 Lake Baikal

贝加尔湖

the Smiths
史密斯一家
the Queen Elizabeth 伊丽莎白
女王号(船)
the Himalayas
喜马拉雅山脉
the Alps
阿尔卑斯山脉
the Urals
乌拉尔山脉
the Amur (the
Heilongjiang)

the/a (black)smith 铁匠 the/a ship 船

the/a mountain 山 the/an alp 高山 the/a mountain range 山脉 the/a lake

黑龙江 Moscow the Kremlin 莫斯科 克里姆林宫 London the Thames 伦敦 泰晤士河 Sicily the Mediterranean 西西里岛 地中海 Apollo the sun 阿波罗(太阳神) 太阳

the/a aplace 宫殿 the/a river 河 the/an island 岛 the/a star (恒) 星

1.5.4—7 "指听者未知"用得比"不确指"更广泛 1.5.4 a/an 用于不可数名词"指听者未知"

a/an "不确指"不同于 a/an "指听者 未知",前 已 略 述 (1.3.9)。在此,可进一步提一下 a/an 扩展用于 不可数 名词, "指听者未知"(而不是 "不确指")的情况。

a/an 因原义为 "一",本来是只用于可数名词的。但在"指听者未知"用法的广泛使用中,人们不仅用 a/an 来 指示"一个",而且进一步用它指示"一种"(听者未知的性质)或"一定度量"(听者未知的量),这样 a/an 就可以用于不可数名词了。从下列例句可以看出,这时其所指是听者未知的事物,而不是不确定的事物。

Usually I prefer tea to coffee, but it was such a washy tea. (NDEC) 平常我是有茶不喝咖啡,可是那茶太淡了。

He has a love (an unconquerable love) for liquor. 他爱喝酒(爱喝酒爱得控制不住)。

He serves the 800 citizens as a one-man police. (NDEC) 他为这800公民充当一只由一个人组成的警察队伍。比较 I phoned (the) police. (ibid) 我给警察局打了电话。

如指听者未知的"多种"事物,不可数名词也可使用复数:

They are now giving you bad teas in the club. (Gordon) 现在那俱乐部的几种茶都很次。(如红茶、绿茶等)

1.5.5 "不确指"与"指听者未知"的比较

就此,我们可以把 a/an 的两种所指归纳一下,"不确指"仅 用于可数名词;"指听者未知"既能用于可数名词,又能用于不 可数名词。无冠词可数名词复数也可用于这两种所指,而不可 数名词的复数形式可指听者未知的"多种"综合或 抽 象 的 事 物。

为对比清楚起见。我们把这两种所指的用 法、按 名 词 类 别,将 "a/an+单数名词"与无冠词复数名词并列左右两栏, 各举例句如下:

1) "不确指"(只用于可数名词单、复数)

He intended to buy an ox. 他想买一头牛。(个体名词)

We must learn to know a friend from an enemy. 我们 必须学会辨别敌友。

Proverbs, like ballads, are the voice of a people, not of an individual person. 谚语 是一个民族的声音,不是某某 个人的声音。集合名词

They dreamed of seeing the world as a family—a happy family. 他们梦想会见到全世 界亲如一家——和睦的一家。

He didn't know if there were oxen for sale. 他不知 道那里有没有卖牛的

Better not be too quick to make friends. 不要轻率地交 朋友。

There is no court of appeal in affairs between peoples. 在各民族间有争端时,没有可 以上诉的法院。

We are for late marriages and small families. The large families of some peasants have been adding heavily to A religious marriage is as their burdens. 我们赞成晚

binding as a civil marriage. 在教堂举行的婚礼与不在教堂 举行的婚礼同样有约束力。

He would then feign a disease. 然后他就会装病。

婚节育。一些农民子女多,曾 一直使他们的负担更为沉重。 (抽象名词、集合名词) (Communicable) Diseases are usually caused by germs.

(传染)病多由病菌所致

2) "指听者未知"(用于可数名词单、复数)

He bought an ox. 他买了 一头牛。

I made his acquaintance through a mutual friend. 我是 通过一个双方的朋友认识他的

The Japanese have been a frugal people. 日本人一直是 个俭朴的民族。

He belongs to an ancient and reputable family. 他出身 于一个古老、有名望的家族。

His father forced him into a distasteful marriage. 他的父 亲强迫他结了婚, 他很厌恶这 一婚姻。

Headache is a chronic disease with me. 头疼是我的一 种慢性病。

3) "指听者未知" (用于不可数名词单、复数)

the size of an apple. 日本柿 树结一种苹果大小的果实。

Oxen lowed. 牛哞哞地叫。

I'm now among friends. 我现在来到朋友们中间。

They are all Englishspeaking peoples. 这些民族都 是说英语的民族。

His friends are all boys from respectable families. 他 的朋友都是体面人家的孩子。

All the three friends were forced into unhappy marriages. 三个朋友都被迫结婚,都是不 幸的婚姻。

Both are diseases of long duration. 这两种病都有很长 的病程。

The kaki bears a fruit about | The institution has already borne rich fruits. 这所研究院 | 已取得丰富成果。(累累成果)

who-I-am" air. 他有一种"瞧 我多了不起"的神气。

She still nursed a hidden sorrow. 她仍然怀抱 着 一 种 隐秘的痛苦。

He has about him a "look- He has been putting on high airs with his learning. 他有了学问, 跟着就摆起架子 来了。

> She was overcome with | sorrows of travel. (NDEC) 她 不胜旅途的苦闷。(种种苦闷)

"a/an+不可数名词"与不可数名词复数 的 更 多 用 法,见 2.4.3-2.4.9; 2.7.1-2.7.4

1.5.6 a daughter of Mrs Brown's 之类"指听者未知"

"普通名词所有格 (带词尾 's 或 -s') + 名词"整个名词词组 前面的冠词可能属于前一名词。 也可能属于后一名词:

- a child's toys (a 应属于 child) 一个孩子的玩具
- a dogs' home (a 应属于 home) 一个狗窝
- a girls' school/a women's college (a 属后者) 一所女校

"专有名词所有格+名词"的整个名词词组前,因人名、地 名等专有名词多不带冠词,也就不加冠词了:

Mrs. Brown's daughter(s) 布朗太太的女儿(们)

"物主代词+名词"表示名词所属关系的词组前,也不加冠 词:

my favorite 我心爱之物 her (own) room 她 (自己) 的房间 their (own) families 他们(自己)的家庭

但是,对于本来可用前位名词所有格或物主代词而不加冠 词的名词词组,如果我们要强调该中心名词指的是"听者未知" 的事物, 我们也在名词词组前加上不定冠词 a/an, 而 所 属 关 系则用"of ..."型后位定语表示。显然,这里的 a/an 属于"指 听者未知"而不属于"不确指"用法:

She's a daughter of Mrs. Brown's. 她是布朗太太的一个女儿。

This is a particular favorite of mine. 这是我的一个特别心爱之物。

She would rather have a room of her (very) own than sleep with her sisters. (LDCE) 她愿意自己有一个房间,不愿和她的姐妹们睡在一起。

He has a mind of his own. 他有他自己的主意。

不带冠词的复数名词接后位 "of …" 所属关系定语, 也用来表示"听者未知"的事物:

They are daughters of Mrs. Brown's. 她们是布朗太太的(几个)女儿。

The five children grew up and had families of their own. (LDCE) 5个孩子都长大了,有了自己的子女。

She has views of her own. 她有她自己的看法。

For reasons of his own, he refused to join the club. (ALD) 他由于自己本身的原因,拒绝参加该俱乐部。

1.5.7 冠词加于双重表所有形式的各种意义

使用"of …"表示所属关系后,不再用或再用名词的 所 有格 (名词词尾's 或-s')表示所属关系,其意义可以比单 在 前位用名词所有格清楚些,可减少或避免歧义:

This is John's picture. (歧义之一: a picture showing John) 这是画着约翰的画。(歧义之二: a picture by John) 这是约翰画的画。(歧义之三: a picture belonging to John) 这是属于约翰的画。

This is a picture of John. (LDCE) (歧义之一) 这是画着约翰的一张画。(歧义之二) 这是约翰画的一张画。

This is a portrait of Rembrandt's. (Eckersley) (歧义之一)

这是伦勃朗画的一幅画像。(歧义之二)这是属于伦勃朗的一幅画像。

That's a portrait of the king. 这是国王的一幅肖像。

That's a painting of the king's. 这是国王的一张画。(属于国王或国王所绘)

She is supposed to be a distant cousin of the Queen's. 据信她是女王的一个远亲。

This is a picture of my own painting. 这是我自己画的一张画。

另一方面,如果我们要强调该中心名词所指是确定的、已知的事物,也可以在名词词组前使用定冠词 the 或指示代词,所属关系仍用后位的"of ..."表示:

That/The daughter of Mrs. Brown's that I mentioned has arrived. (GCE) 我提到过的布朗太太的那个女儿已经来到了。

How old is this world of ours? 我们这个世界有多久的历史了呢?

You will soon get used to the ways of ours. (NDEC) 你会很快习惯于我们这些作法的。

我们也可以用其他后位定语替换"of ..."短语,名词前仍用冠词:

The orange has a scent all its own. (简明英汉词典) 橘子有它独特的香味。

We'll create a medical science that is China's own. 我们要创立中国特有的医药科学。

第六章 三种貌合神离的 无冠词形式

1.6.1 无冠词专有名词、可数名词 (复)、不可数名词

前章提到,无冠词的名词可以是专有名词或普通名词复数。

专有名词,如 Mozart 不带冠词,其人名意义(莫扎特)及 书面上开头大写的形式,表示它为"独指。"

普通名词中可数名词复数,如 musicians 不带冠词时(不用确指的 the musicians 时),有其词尾 -s 的复数形式,表示它或为 "不确指",或为 "指听者未知"。(可数名词单数一般经常或带不定冠词,或带定冠 词 a/the musician,一音乐家/那音乐家。)而普通名词中的不可数名词,除有时带定冠词(如 the music 那音乐)外,也常常取无冠词形式如 music: "You don't care for folk songs, do you?"—"Yes, I do enjoy folk music." (English 900) (带定语的 folk music 也常用无冠词形式)"您不大喜欢民歌吧,是不是?""喜欢,我非常喜爱民间音乐。"

不带冠词的不可数名词,既没有开头大写的形式,也没有复数词尾等词形变化——没有任何附加的特殊形式,表示其所指意义 (reference 或 referencial meaning)。我们可以称这种无冠词普通名词非复数形式 (主要是无冠词不可数名词) 为零位冠词(zero article)形式。可取零位冠词形式的,主要是一部分不可数的集合名词、抽象名词与全部物质名词。

零位冠词表示"概括指"(general reference),即指综合、概括、抽象的一类事物:

Very little machinery is used here. (集合名词) 这里很少使用机器。

He has ordered (a set of/a few pieces of/several articles of) new furniture. 他订购了 (一套/几件/一些) 新家具。

Police are controlling the crowds. 警察们控制着那些人群。

The street was lined with police. 街道上布满了警察。
Ordinary clothing will suffice. 平常穿的衣服就满可以了。
Fruit is good for health. (集合名词与抽象名词) 水果有益于健康。

Muck (物质名词) means money (集合名词). (ODCIE) 废物中有财富。

Bursting with sweet, refreshing juice, the grapes gleam in the sun like huge drops of sparkling water. (物质名词) 葡萄珠饱含甜美清新的汁液,几乎要涨裂,一颗颗象亮晶晶的大水珠在阳光中闪闪发亮。

Truth (抽象名词) fears lies no more than gold (物质名词) fears rust. 真理不怕谎言,正如黄金不怕锈斑。

What interesting work! But what nasty weather!. You can't expect much fine weather in winter. (抽象名词) 多有趣的工作啊! 可是, 多糟糕的天气! 你不能指望冬天常有好天。(比较 What a nasty day!)

1.6.2 兼有可数性与不可数性的名词

有些名词兼有可数名词与不可数名词的意义,在其表示可数名词意义时带 a/an, the,或用无冠词复数形式;在其表示不可数名词意义时取零位冠词形式 (无冠词单数形式),或带 the 的单数形式。

作为可数名词 (a/the language/marriage 或复数形式):
Soldiers quartered in a foreign country will pick up a
language without effort. (不确指)驻扎在外国的士兵会毫不

费劲地学会一种语言。

English is the leading language of commerce. (确指) 英语是国际贸易中所用最主要的语言。

English, Dutch and German are cognate languages. (指听者未知) 英语、荷兰语和德语是同语族语言。

She made an unhappy love marriage beneath her. (指听者未知) 她同比她地位低的人恋爱结婚,婚后未得幸福。

There was one child of the marriage. 这一婚配有了一个孩子。

Unhappy marriages resulted frequently therefrom. 因为这个,常常造成不幸的婚姻。

作为不可数名词 (琴位冠词或带 the 形式)

Language is the immediate reality of thought. 语言是思想的直接现实。(直接体现了思想)

There was no sincerity in the language that he wielded. 在他所要弄的语言中毫无诚意。

Marriage is for life a serious business. 婚姻是人们终生的、严肃的大事。

1.6.3 可数名词单数亦可取零位冠词形式

在现代英语中,可数名词的原形(词典中的形式,即不带冠词的单数形式),一般不能指称实际事物。例如,我们不单用无冠词单数的 person为句中成分,我们总是用a person,persons,the persons。这就表明,对于可数名词,除其复数(不确指或"指听者未知")形式外,冠词一般是必不可少的,有了冠词,该名词才有其实指意义:There's a young person to see you. (ALD) 有个年轻人(常指女子)来看你。

但是,必须注意:可数名词单数,有时也不加冠词,取"零位冠词"形式,仍然有其实指意义——这就是可数名词单数的

"概括化"(generalized)用法,也即其"概括指"用法。比较: You had better go and speak to him in person. (NDEC) 你最好亲自去对他说。

You are going to speak in the person of Daily News. 你将作为《每日新闻》的代表发表谈话。

在表示具体关系的 in the person of ... (作为 ······的人)中, the person 是具体的"人",而在 in person(亲自)中,person则取其概括或者说笼统的意义,类似一个 高度抽象的 oneself。而整个介词短语 in person 表示高度抽象的关系,用副词表示可说 personally。

可数名词单数,包括抽象可数名词单数,都常有此用法。例如,我们一般说 a/the name, names, the names 或 a person by the name of Black 等。但在 I know him only by name. (我只知其名。)及 I know of a worker, Tom by name. (我知道有个名叫汤姆的工人。)中,name 用零位冠词,表示"概括指"。

1.6.4 常用零位冠词形式的一些个体名词

可数名词,而且是个体名词的 man, bed, church, college, office, prison, school, hospital, table, flower 等特别经常取零位冠词形式,用于"概括指":

Men die, but man is immortal. (Wendt) 人各有一死,但是人类永生。

I'm getting old, and bed's the place for me. (Zandvoort) 我老了,我的地方就是床上了。

How often do you go to church (attend services)? (ALD) 你经常去做礼拜吗?

Do you agree with the separation of church (religious power) and state? (LDCE) 你赞成政教 (教会和政府) 分开

吗?

Which party will be in office (in power) after the general election? (ALD) 大选后哪个政党将会执政?

Many people believe that prison (imprisonment) isn't a cure for crime. 很多人认为监禁 (关在狱中) 不是惩治犯罪 的有效方法。

Tom hates school. (LDCE) 汤姆讨厌上学。 可数名词单数零位冠词形式更多用法见 2.5.1 等。

1.6.5 三种貌合神离无冠词形式的比较

因而,下列左、中、右三栏的无冠词名词形式,是"貌合"神离的。三种形式同是不带冠词,只有是否词头大写与是否复数形式的区别,就使其性质各异,所指不同。

1) 专有名词与个体名词

独 指 [词头大写]

I drove to Table

Bay, Cape Town, and he went to have supper at Cable's.
我驱车去往开普敦的泰勃尔湾,而他到凯勃尔家去吃晚饭。(开普敦,在南非南端)

不确指、指 听者未知 〔复数形式-s 等〕

Disputes that can be settled round conference tables shouldn't be brought upon battle fields. (比较 round a conference table) 能在会议桌上解决的争端就不要在战场上解决。

概 括 指 [零位冠词形式]

They were at table, and Jane was waiting on table. (比较 An hour later, Jane was playing cards with them at the table.) 他们在吃饭,珍妮在伺候饭。(一小时后,珍妮已经和他们在桌上玩起牌来。)

Flora (a feminine name) was originally the name of the goddess of flowers. 弗萝拉(女人名)原 来是花神的名字

The patient was in St. George's. 病 人现在在圣 乔 治 医 院。(圣乔治医院为伦 敦一大医院)

The tree was covered with flowers. (比较 A | white flower fell coming on her shoulder.) 树上布满鲜花。(一 朵白花 落 在 她 肩 头。)

Many doctors run hospitals of their own. (比较 He runs a hospital | now in hospital. of his own.) 许 多医生开设着自己 办的医院。(他自 | 己开办一所医院。)

The tree was in (full) flower, and the bushes were into flower. 那一树鲜 花正在盛开, 那灌 木丛也都要开花了

The patient has been taken to hospital. He is (NDEC; 美国英语 |hospital 多带 a/ the) 病人已被送 到医院。他现正住 院治疗

2) 专有名词、个体名词与集合名词

独 指 〔词头大写〕

Since Taylor established himself as a tailor, I've always had my clothes made at Taylor's. 自从泰 勒当裁缝以来我总在 泰勒的裁缝店做衣服

不确指、指听 者 未 知 [复数形式 -s 等]

Tailors make clothes to order. Moths fret clothes. 裁缝做定做的衣 服。蛀虫会把衣服 咬坏

概括 抬 〔零位冠词形式〕

A coat is an article of clothing. 外衣是一件衣服

Food, clothing and shelter are basic necessities of life. 衣、食、 住是生活的根本条 He came out of Yale in 1908. 1908 年他毕业于美国耶鲁大学。

They are of noble families.(比较 He's of a noble family.) 他们出身贵族家庭

件

He is a man of family. 他出身于名门

3) 专有名词与抽象名词

独 指 [词头大写]

English was then spoken only in England. 那时只是在英格兰说英语

不确指、指听者未知 「复数形式-s等」 Speeches are made in English and in other languages. 人们用英语 及其他几种语言讲 演

概 括 指 [零位冠词形式]

He objected in strong language. 他以激烈的言词提 出反对

1.6.6 **零位冠词"概括指"应区别于别**具所指标志的无冠词形式

"零位"或"零形式"(zero, zero form, 见刘涌泉等编《英汉语言学词汇》,中国社会科学出版社)一语,很久以来就被语法学家们用于语法现象上。如有些名词,其复数形式不加词尾,与单数形式同形,就被称为零位复数(zero plural,如GCE, p. 178),定语从句有时不用关系代词与主句连接,就说是取零位关系代词(zero relative pronoun,如GCE, p. 865)等等。

从语法理论要为教学实践服务的角度来看,零位复数等其他术语是否必要,是另一问题。本书只采用沿用已久的"零位冠词"(甘希娜、Quirk等)一语,并根据语言实际与各家论述,明确"零位冠词"表示"概括指",设想这是有利于把各种有、无冠

词的名词形式的所指意义区别清楚的。

我们讲零位冠词形式,只是表示概括、抽象意义的无冠词普通名词单数形式,它没有任何表示所指意义的附加标志,这就是它的特殊形式、特殊标志。书面上以大写字母开头的专有名词,大写字母标志着其属"独指"意义;以复数词尾或其他复数形式为标志的无冠词复数名词,具有"不确指"或"指听者未知"的所指意义——都不属于"零位冠词 概 括 指"的 范畴。

不过,国内近年有一种不够周密的提法,说"零冠词"就是不用冠词,因而讲专有名词不用冠词时,也说"专有名词前一般用零冠词"(1981年《新编英语语法》,134页)。 这是在涉及专有名词前冠词用法的枝节问题上,提法过于简单,与公认的zero article 的根本意义不相符合。

诚然,所有语法著作对零位冠词根本意义的论述都是一致的,《新编英语语法》对此的根本论述也是一样:"零冠词表示名词的泛指或一般概念"(125页,143页)。1983年《英语冠词新论》讲得更细致些:"零冠词是个无形冠词,它主要表示抽象、不确定,或个体形式趋于消失等含义。"(169页)"比较……The woman with the child ... 零冠词在单数可数名词前的标志作用在于表明。名词所指对象的个体形式已经减弱、冲淡,或消失。代之而起的,是某种模糊的状态、抽象的意义……"(157,158页)

与这些根本论据有出入的是该书以下解释中的最后一句话:"专有名词是一类本来就不需要冠词的名词。按理,它前面不用冠词的形式只能说是"无冠词",不能说是空着位子的零冠词。但……当我们把发怒的 Mary 看成是一个与平时的 Mary 不同的人时……an angry Mary 的说法就会产生。由此可见,专有名词也有加用和不加用冠词的问题。为了简化术语,我们把各类名词前不用冠词的形式都叫零冠词。"(135, 136页)

大家可以设想, with an angry Mary 固然是说"同一个发怒的玛丽一起", an ... Mary 有"指听者未知"的意义(见2.1.2), 而在 with Mary("同玛丽一起")中, 专有名词 Mary 应属"独指"意义,应该没有什么"泛指"、"抽象"、"个体趋于消失"之类的意义吧。显然, with Mary 中专有名词不带冠词, 性质完全不同于 with child (怀孕)中个体名词所取零位冠词形式。

如果各类名词前不用冠词所表示的意义全都一样,再采用一个"零位冠词"的名称,那倒真是使术语繁多了。我们用零位冠词概括指这一提法,正是要区别于不用冠词而有其他标志表明其他所指意义的用法。

应该注意到国外一些著名语法家早已认识到普通名词单数形式不带冠词的特殊综合化、概括化、抽象化意义。苏联的M·甘希娜等在《英语语法》中提到:"零位冠词是用于表示一般意义的名词","具有概括的力量,它表示我们的心目中所想到的并不是某一物类中的个别事物(不论是特定的或不定的),而是更为抽象,更为一般的概念。"(1965年汉译本,46页)该书在此还比较了零位冠词与复数名词不加冠词的两种不同情况:

The apple tree was in full blossom. (该书说 这是"零 位冠词"形式)

The tree was covered with young blossoms. (该书说复数名词不加不定冠词为"不定冠词的零位形式",实质上指其具不定冠词"不确指"、"指听者未知"的所指意义)

英国 R. Quirk 等在 GCE 中特别提出 zero article 不能包括专有名词的无冠词形式: Althought in sentences such as I like cake, I like John, the two nouns look superficially alike in terms of article usage, we will say that cake has "zero article" but that John has "no article". The label

"zero" is appropriate in the case of common nouns which has article contrast (cake as opposed to a cake and the cake). Proper nouns have no article contrast if we disregard cases like the John I mean is tall, and will therefore be said to have "no article". (p. 128, Note(b))

就此,我们可以用 John, cake 二词再比较一下无冠词专有名词、无冠词复数名词与零位冠词形式的区别:

专有名词	个 体	名 词	物质名词
"约翰"	"这块(这些)点心"	"一块 (一些) 点心"	"点心"、"糕点"
I like John. 无冠词 独指 (书面大写,	I like the cake(s). (单数或复数形式) 确 指	I want a cake. I like cakes. (单或复,各有附加形式) 不确指	I like cake、 无冠词,单数形式 (无附加形式)零 位冠词概括指
有附加标志,即附加形式)		I found a cake. I found cakes. (单或复)指听者未知	

语法上采用"零位冠词"一语,从其"无形有位"的意义上讲,有如数学上采用"无值有位"的"零"表示一位数一样(如·01)。

第七章 四种"类指":"概括指及 a(an)/复数/the"类指"

1.7.1-2 "概括指" --- "类指"的一种

1.7.1 "概括指"首先用于不可数名词

前面讨论过的"不确指"、"指听者未知"与"确指"三种所指,无论是指单数或复数事物,都是指一类事物中特定的事物,即其中的一个、一些或一种,即使是不确定的,也是一类中个

别的即特定的事物,例如 a rose, roses, the rose(s)。Pluck her a rose/roses. 给她摘一朵玫瑰花/一些玫瑰花。I've sent her a rose/roses/the roses. 我已经给她送去一朵/一些/那些玫瑰花了。因此,这三种所指都可称为"特指"(specific references,见GCE)。独指,如 Her name is Rose.(她名叫罗斯。)中的 Rose,也属"特指"中的一种。

与"特指"相对的是"类指"(generic references)。上一章讨论的"概括指"就是"类指"中的一种。用于概括指的零位冠词形式所指事物,不是一类中特定的一个、一些或一种,而是泛指该类,指其整个一类或仅指类属。让我们先观察一下以下句中不可数名词(物质名词;部分不可数的集合名词与抽象名词)零位冠词形式"概括指"的"类指"性质:

1) 集合名词"概括指"

In summer you see cattle at grass everywhere. (cattle, grass 指类属) 夏天, 你可以看见到处有牲口在吃革。

In winter the place is bare of vegetation. You see no sign of vegetation anywhere. (vegetation 指整类) 冬天,这里荒无草木。你看不见一点植物的踪迹。

2) 物质名词"概括指"

Coffee is made by crushing coffee beans, while tea is made of tea leaves. (指整类) 咖啡是辗碎咖啡豆制成的,而茶是由茶树叶子制成的。

We have tea with milk. (指类属) 我们喝茶加奶。

Without well-brewed tea I am never myself. (由定语限定的,范围较小的类属)喝不上沏得很好的茶,我总觉得不自在。

3) 抽象名词"概括指"

Great joy was felt among his friends. (指类属) 他的朋友们都感到极其高兴。

Quality matters more than quantity. (指整类)质量重于

数量。

Sardines have good table quality. (指类属) 沙丁鱼有很高的食用价值。

1.7.2 不可数名词亦可取"指听者未知"、"确指"形式

不可数名词除常取"概括指"形式外,也可以加a/an或the指听者未知的"一种"或确定的"某种"不可数事物。例如:

They served such a watery tea/such bad teas. (指听者未知;复数指"各种",如红茶、绿茶、花茶等)他们供应的茶太淡薄了/几种茶都太次了。

前一节 2) 中指类属的物质名词如加 some, 即转指 度量上不确定或听者未知的某种物质: Usually we only have some tea, but this morning we had tea with some milk. 我们平常只喝点茶,但今天早晨我们喝的茶加了些牛奶。Some tea is very fragrant. 有的茶很香。

He sipped the tea, and then nibbed the cake. (确指) 他啜了啜那茶,然后咬了一点蛋糕。

The crowd took a brutal joy in heaping insults upon him. (指听者未知) 那群人劈头盖脸地辱骂他,从这样的残忍中取乐。

She looked the joy she felt. (确指) 她心里 高兴, 脸上就显出那种高兴心情。

Exaggeration is a salient quality of Yankee humor. (指 听者未知) 夸张是美国人幽默语言的突出特色。

Never sacrifice qualities to quantity. (仅转作可数名词时,可属不确指) 永远不可为求数量,而不顾质量。

This is of the same quality as of the last. (确指) 这个与上一个的性质相同。

1.7.3-5 a/an,复数、the"类指"——又是三种"类指"

1.7.3 从"不确指"与"确指"扩展而来的"类指"用法

英语中除零位冠词"概括指"这种"类指"以外,还有三种类指,即 a/an 类指、无冠词复数类指、the 类指。

a/an 类指与无冠词复数类指的指类意义,实际上是 不确指意义的扩展:

A rose is a lovely flower. 不确指意义: (任何)一朵玫瑰 (都)是一朵可爱的花。 类指意义: 玫瑰是一种很可爱的花。

Roses are lovely flowers. 不确指意义: 朵朵玫瑰都是可爱的花。 类指意义: 玫瑰是可爱的花。

the 类指一般用 "the + 单数 名词" (用 the + 复数 名词指类见 1.7.8; 2.9.5)。the 类指用法虽是从确指用法扩展而来,但其作用是指明某类以区别于别类,已截然不同于 the 确指,确指的作用是指明一类中的某个、某些以区别于同类中的别个。比较:

Isn't the rose in her hair lovely? (确指) 她头发上戴的那朵玫瑰花真好看,是不是?

The rose is a lovely flower. It is often called the queen of flowers. (类指) 玫瑰是一种很可爱的花。 玫瑰常被称为花中女王。

1.7.4 与"不确指"、"确指"同形,但属"类指"

a/an 类指与无冠词复数类指也可以说就是不确指,是不确指的两种形式的引申用法。但不确指不都是"类指":

An ill wound is cured, not an ill name. (不确指,可用作类指)恶伤可愈,恶名难除。

Give a dog an ill name and hang him. (不确指,并非类

指)给谁造个坏名声,就会使他难度命。

the 类指却不同于 the 确指。比较:

Do you know who invented the wheel/the saw/the compass /the telephone/the radio? (但 Who invented printing/television?) (类指) 你知道是谁发明了车轮/锯/罗盘/电话/收音机的吗? 谁发明的印刷术/电视?(后二名词不可数)

Today the topic of our lesson will be the rose/the flower /the dog/the article/the video-phone. (类指) 今天我们讲课的题目是玫瑰/花/狗/冠词/电视电话。

Your mother was on the telephone earlier. (确指) 刚才你母亲曾打电话来。

1.7.5 a/an、复数、the, 三种"类指"各司其职

a/an "类指"、无冠词复数 "类指"与 the "类指",三者各司其职。我们表示"类指"时,要根据所指意义的更细微的差别,选用其一,有时可兼用其二。

1) 只宜选用一种"类指"的情况:

只用 a/an "类指"——指联系于任何个体或每一个体的[情况: A living dog is better than a dead lion. 一条活狗胜于一头死狮子。 There are more ways of killing a dog than by hanging. (谚语) 目的只一个,手段可灵活。(Brewer)

只用复数类指——指联系于不同个体、联系于多数或群体 (而非任一个体,亦非整类)的情况. Let sleeping dogs lie. (谚语)若能躲事,就别惹事。 Barking dogs seldom bite. (谚语) 汪汪叫的狗,很少真咬人。吵闹连声,未必真凶。

只用 the "类指"——指联系于整个一类(而非任一个体或群体)的情况: The dog, like the wolf, was originally a flesh-eating beast. 狗原来是食肉兽类,就象狼一样。

2) 可兼用两种"类指"的情况:

Beware of a silent dog and still water. (silent 与 still 开头辅音相同) 狗虽不叫,水似平稳,更得多加小心。 Dumb dogs are dangerous. (谚语) (dumb 与后面二词开头辅音相同;前后同音使谚语上口动听) 不叫的狗更凶狠。

「A dog is a faithful friend. 狗是个忠实的朋友。

The dog is a faithful friend (to his master). 狗是 (主人的) 忠实的朋友。(所指为各个人的单个的狗,或指狗类,而非多数狗与人的关系,故不宜说 Dogs are faithful friends.)

Dogs bark at strangers. 狗见了生人 (一般都) 汪汪叫。
The dog barks at a stranger. 狗见了生人汪汪叫。 (不见得任何一只都汪汪叫, 不说 A dog barks ...)

Lookers-on see most of the game. (一般是) 旁观者清。
The looker-on sees most of the game. 旁观者清。 (所述为一类人或一般情况,但不见得任何一个旁观者都看得更清楚,故不说 A looker-on sees ...)

3) 但有时三种类指可以通用——所指情况既联系于个体, 又联系于群体,还联系于整个一类:

A cat is not so vigilant as a dog.

Cats are not so vigilant as dogs.

The cat is not so vigilant as the dog. 猫不如狗机警。

1.7.6-7 a/an "类指"与复数"类指"的代表性质

1.7.6 代表一般个体与代表一类

a/an "类指"是以不确定的个别事物代表该类的一般个体,说明其性能、状态。无冠词复数"类指"是以不确定的复数事物代表一类,说明其综合情况。

各种可数名词都可以用单数代表一般个体,用复数代表一类,

What are the ways in which a successful scientist or d technologist thinks and acts?

一个成功的科学家或技术人员的思想、工作方法是怎样的呢? (个体名词)

A large family was no easy to support. 子女多,抚养就困难。(集合名词)

An urge puts an end to reason. 事急顾不得多考虑。
(抽象名词)

Scientists and technologists develop applied science. 科学家们与技术人员们发展应用科学。

Preferential treatment is given to armymen's families. 军属得到优待。

He knows how to adapt means to ends. 他善于为不同目的采取不同手段。

比较 It rained for days on end. (WNCD) (概括指) 一连下了几天雨。

1.7.7 改用或加用 some 能区别是否属"类指"

如果 "a/an + 名词"或无冠词复数属不确指或 "指听者未知",名词前可分别改用或加用不定代词 some:

"Did any man call here today?"—"Yes, a/some man did call." (指听者未知)"今天有人来吗?"——"有,有个人来过。"

(Some) People say he's right. (Others say he isn't.) (指 听者未知) 有些人说他对。(有些人说他不对。)

(Some) Drinking songs would fit the occassion better. (不确指) 唱几只饮酒歌可能更适于这一场合。

(Some) Student songs were sung, but no worker's songs. (指听者未知) 大家唱了几只学生歌曲,没有唱工人歌曲。

但如"a/an+名词"或无冠词复数用于"类指",则名词前不

可改用、加用不定代词 some:

A drowning man will clutch at a straw, (不说*Some drowning man ...) 人要淹死的时候, 抓根稻草不撒手。

A man may lead a horse to the water, but he cannot make it drink. (谚语) 领到水边来饮马,喝不喝水要由它。

Men may meet, but mountains never. (谚语) (不说 Some men ...) 人和人会相逢, 山和山各不动。

When a highbrow song is started, few people join in the singing. Highbrow songs find few singers. 曲高和寡。

1.7.8-11 the "类指"的广泛应用

1.7.8 the "类指"(用单数或复数名词)直指整类

the 类指是以定冠词 the 限定整个一类,以排除 他 类,最常用 "the+可数名词单数"指整类、指全体,仅表示民族、阶级、政党等成员的名词多用 the 加其复数指整类。不可数名词很少用 the 类指。

1) "the + 单数名词"直指整类、全体:

These microbes degenerate human tissues as the greenfly will destroy the rose. 这些微生物侵害人体组织, 就象 蚜 虫糟塌玫瑰花。

Unlike the scientist, the engineer is not free to select the problem which interest him. 工程师不同于科学家,工程师不能自由选择使他感兴趣的课题。

The bourgeoisie has torn away from the family its sentimental veil, and has reduced the family relation to a mere money relation. 资产阶级撕下了罩在家庭关系上的温情脉脉的面纱,把家庭关系变成了纯粹的金钱关系。

The end justifies the means? (the means 单、复同形) 目

的正当,手段就算正当吗?

2) "the+复数民族、阶级、政党成员名词"指全体 The Tories will not lift a finger to help the workers. 保守党人对于工人是一点忙也不肯帮的。

The proletarians have nothing to lose but their chains. 无产者失去的只是身上的锁链。

Even the most conservative elements are impressed by the signs that the Russians have equalled or even surpassed the Americans. 甚至最保守的人们对俄国人赶上或竟超过美国人的种种迹象也深有感受。(比较 This is why Americans are so impressed by a Mediterranean fishing port. 句中 Americans 为不确指:"因此美国人常常非常欣赏地中海的一个渔港。")

3) "the+某些不可数集合名词"强调整体(不可数名词一般用零位冠词概括指形式指类):

The police are a law-enforcement organization. (LLCE) 警察当局是一种强制执行法律的组织。

The land does have its limits. (English for Today) 土地总是有限的。(比较 Land is fragile. 土地是易遭破坏的。)

1.7.9 "the+形容词、分词等"的"类指"用法

从 the 类指用法扩展出来一种重要冠词 用法,"the+形容词、分词等",指具有该形容词、分词等所表示属性的整个一类人或一类事物。这种名词性词组多按复数对待(接用动词等),但有时指不可数抽象事物,就要按单数对待。

1) "the+形容词、分词、序数词、指量代词等"指一类人或一类可数事物,用作复数名词:

Only the deaf appreciate hearing, only the blind realize the manifold blessings that lie in sight. (the deaf/blind people) 只有耳聋的人才知道听觉的可贵,只有眼瞎的人才懂

得视觉中蕴藏着多少幸福。

I became convinced that the seeing see little. (the seeing people) They actually see only the startling. (分词) (the startling things) 我渐渐相信,能看见东西的人们所见甚少。实际上他们只看见了那些令人惊奇的事物。

Survival of the fittest has been the law in nature. (the fittest living beings) 适者生存一直是自然界的规律。

The private colleges vary very much in standards, from the world-famous and select to the cranky and the obscure. (the ... colleges) 私立大学的水平有很大不同,有世界 驰 名的、卓越的学府,也有很不象样的、默默无闻的学校。

The elderly, the weak, the sick and the disabled or handicapped are all taken good care of. (the ... people) 老、弱、 病、残都得到很好的照顾。

So don't you say the well-fed have no idea how the starving suffer. 因此你不要说饱汉不知饿汉饥。

He was among the first to recognize a writer of merit in the author. (序数词) 他是最早发现这位作者是个优秀 作家的人们之一。

Why should the many be oppressed by the few? (the ... people) (指量代词) 多数人为什么竟会受少数人的压迫?

Heaven is supposed to be the place for the good when they are dead. (the good people) 有人设想,天堂是好人死后去的地方。

The young often looked down upon the old. 过去年轻人常看不起老年人。

2) "the+形容词、分词、指量代词等"指一类抽象事物, 用如单数:

The beautiful is higher than the good. 美的要高于善的。

The unexpected always happens. (分词) 想不到的事 总会发生。

The new and progressive triumphs over the old and obsolete. 新的、进步的事物总是战胜老的、陈旧的事物。

Something/Nothing out of the ordinary. 有点/没有什么异乎寻常的事。

She always accept the inevitable with philosophy. 她总是很明智地接受不可避免的事情。

You can see for yourself how they take the rough with the smooth. 你自己可以看到,他们既能适应顺利的境遇,也能承受困苦的磨难。

Scientific researches proceed from the known to the un-known. 科学研究总是从已知事物到未知事物。

I'm always ready to do the little I can for the reading public. (指量代词) 我总是愿为广大读者尽我微小的力量。

1.7.10 "the+形容词、分词等"亦可为"确指"

不过,应该注意"the+形容词、分词等"的名词性词组并非总是"类指",有时它指的是由上下文或具体场合决定的确定的人或事物,而属"确指"。这时,它要体现所指实际人或事物的单、复数或不可数性:

Then the blind is leading the blind. (Galsworthy) 这样,就是盲人在领着盲人了。

The departed was descended from a noble family. 死者出身于一个贵族家庭。

It was a fight of a new idea against the old, and gradually the new won out. 那是新旧思想之间的一场战斗,新思想逐渐取得胜利。

"Are there any eggs left?"— "Yes, I'm keeping the few

that remain for tomorrow." "还有鸡蛋吗?" —— "有,我留了这几个明天吃。"

The little I have is not worth giving. (The few I have are not worth giving.) 我所有的这一点点不值得送人。

There is good in every one, and education draws out the good. 人人内心都有善良的天性,教育就是要启发这善良的天性。(句中 good 可视为已转作名词,前一个属零位冠词形式"概括指",后一个属"确指")Don't return evil for good.不要以怨报德。To resist evil by evil is evil. 以恶制恶仍属恶劣。仅最后一个 evil 为形容词。

1.7.11 the 并非可随意加于任一形容词、分词

"the+形容词、分词等"的词组,除上文有名词指明其所指事物(包括人)外,皆为惯常使用的或在上下文与具体场合中所指自明的。我们不能随意把 the 加于任一形容词、分词来指一类人或一类事物。

例如,指"幸福的人们"不能只说 the happy,指"讨厌的人"、"讨厌的事"不能只说 the disgusting。但我们惯常说 the well-to do 富裕的人们, the poor and needy 贫困的人们, the down-trodden 被压迫人民, the agreeable 如意的事。指"外国人"不能只说 the foreign,可以说 a/the alien, aliens 外国人, a/the foreign national, foreign nationals 外国 侨民, a/the non-native, non-natives 非本地人,因为 alien, national, native 三形容词已可转作名词。

"the+形容词、分词等"的惯用词组及这种词组 构成的惯用短语又如:

the dead and the dying 死亡与濒于死亡的人们 the fallen and the missing 阵亡与失踪者 take the bitter with the sweet 既能享乐又能吃苦

whether he's in the right or in the wrong 无论他是对 是错

in the wet (in the rain)

in the open (in the open air) 在户外

in the dead of winter/night (但 at dead of night) 严冬/ 深夜

in the thick of the fair/forest/snowstorm 在集市/森林/ 暴风雪中心 (深处)

on the flat of his hand/back 在手掌/脊背上 hides in the raw(rawhides) 生皮子

a diamond in the rough 待加工的钻石,可造就的人才

不过,这类形容词有些可视为已用作名词: discuss in rough 大略讨论, the roughs and smooths 种种艰苦与顺利。 请比较:

on the whole 总地看来 in the dark 黑暗中 in the past 过去

all to the good 只有好处

for the good of 为……的利 益

the white of (蛋/眼) 白

cloth in the grey 未漂本色 布

wood in the green 未干的 木头

born in the purple/born with attired in purple 身穿紫衣

as a whole 作为一个整体 before/after dark 天黑前/后 a man with a past 有过一 番经历的人

for good and all 一劳永逸 地

little good and much harm 无利而有害

dressed in white 穿着白衣 服

dressed in grey 穿着灰衣服

穿着绿衣 dressed in green 服

a silver spoon in the mouth 出生于显贵/富贵人家

至于 an/the accused (被告)、the nobles (贵族)、the uncountables (不可数名词) 等则已从形容词转化为名词。

第八章 名词加与不加冠词 的主要用法小结

1.8.1 四种"特指"形式与四种"类指"形式

综合前面各章所述,英语名词加冠词与无冠词形式各种用法,不外"特指"与"类指"两大类(1.7.1)。分属两大类所指意义的名词带或不带冠词形式的主要用法,可归结如以下二表。表中例词都是前面各章例句中出现过的,例词下标有各例句所在章、节号:

1) 名词的四种"特指"形式

独指	确指	不	确 指
开头大写 , 无 私词或惯 加 the	the ~	a/an ~	无 冠 词 ~ -(e)s 等复数形式
Rose	the rose(s)	a rose	roses
Smith	the ox/oxen	an ox	oxen
the Smiths 1.5.3 Oxford the Thames 1.5.2; 1.5.3	1.7.1; 1.7.3	1.5.5, 1	1.5.5, 1
	the family/-ies 1.5.5, 1	as a family 1.5.5, 1	small families 1.5.5, 1
	the marriage(s) 1.6.2	a civil marriage	late marriages

(续表)

独 指		不	角 指·
开头大写, 无冠词或惯	确指		无冠词
加 the	the ~	a/an ~	~ -(e)s 等复数形式
	(不可数名词)		
	the police		
	the fruit		
	the land		
	1.5.4		
	the tea		
	1.7.2		
	the joy she felt		
	the same quality		
	1.7.2		
	(指已知,与上确指同)		未 知
		形式同上	形式同上
		a rose	roses
		an ox	oxen
		1.5.5,2	1.5.5,2
		an ancient family	respectable families
		1.5.5,2	1.5.5,2
		a distasteful	unhappy marriages
		marriage	1.5.5,2
		1.5.5,2	
!		(不可数名词)	
!		a fruit about the	
		size ···	
		1,5,5,3	
		a washy tea	bad teas
:		1.5.4; 1.7.2	1.5.4; 1.7.2
		a bruta1 joy	
		a salient quality	
		1.7.2	

独指栏为专有名词;其他各栏自上而下普通名词顺序为: 个体名词、可数集合名词,可数抽象名词;不可数名词(集合名词、物质名词、抽象名词)。

"a/an+名词"指听者未知事物的用法,甚至还能用于专有名词,如 a different John Smith, an England that I loved 等,见 2.1.2 等。"指听者未知"用于专有名词及不可数 名词,已超出冠词的基本用法,属冠词的扩展用法,这方面进一步的论述见第二编第一章 (2.1.2; 2.1.5 等)与第四章 (2.4.3; 2.4.4; 2.4.8 等)。

2) 名词的四种"类指"形式

the 类指,直	a/an 类指,代表	无冠词复数类指代表 一类: ~-(e)s等复数	概括指概括一类:零
指整类: the ~	一般个体: a/an~	形式	位冠词形式
the rose	a rose	roses	•
the flower	a flower	flowers	in flower
the scientist	a scientist	scientists	
1.7.3	1.7.3	1.7.3	1.6.5
the family	a large family	armymen's families	of family
1.7.8	1.7.6	1.7.6	1.6.5
the end	an end	ends	on end
1.7.8	1.7.6	1.7.6	1.7.6
(不可数名词) the police the land			(不可数名词) lined with police land is fragile 1.6.1
1.7.8			tea is made of 1.7.1 marriage is great joy is felt quality matters 1.7.1
(形容词、分词等)			
the blind the seeing			
the disabled]		
the first the few			
1.7.9:1.7.10			

在 Land is fragile. 句中, land 为 "概括指";在 The land does have its limits. 句中 the land 为 the 类指(强调整类;见 1.7.8,3)。少数抽象名词,如来自形容词的 future 也可用于这两种类指: In future, be more careful. (LDCE) (今后多加小心。)(概括指) The day is dim in the future. No man ever saw the future. (NDEC) (那一天还遥遥无期呢。未来是渺茫莫测的。)(the类指,强调超出现在的未来时期,见 3.4.7等。)

除不可数名词概括指外,各种类指皆属冠词的扩展用法(包括可数名词单数概括指用法),详见第二编第五、八、九各章,如 2.9.1, 2.9.2 等。

1.8.2 从冠词的基本用法到扩展用法

冠词最常见的用法只是 a/an, the 从其来源与本义("一"与"这,那")形成的基本用法,加上专有名词前冠词的 用法,即:独指、确指、不确指与"指听者未知"四种。"a/an+名词"指听者未知事物,原限用于可数名词单数,后转用于不可数名词,这就超出了它的基本用法,已属其扩展用法。冠词的几种"类指"用法,也是它们的扩展用法。这些扩展用法,我们在第一编有关章、节中只是初步提到,其较细致、较灵活的运用还有待进一步讨论,因为,正是冠词的这些扩展用法,使英语名词有了更加丰富多采的表现力。可从这几小段文字中体会一下:

The plague, the famine, the earthquake, the tempest were too spasmodic in their action; something more constantly destructive was needed; and that something was MAN, the inventor of sword and gun and poison gas. (the plague 等: the 类指; sword and gun: 并列名词前习惯上略去冠词,类指,见3.2.2,3.2.5等; MAN: 零位冠词概括指) 瘟疫、灾荒、地震、风暴,它们忽而发生,忽而停歇,太

没有常性了,这就需要一种更能坚持不断毁灭众生的东西,这种东西就是人——他发明了又是刀剑、又是枪炮、又是毒气。

We dare not forget that we are the heirs of that first revolution. Let the word go forth from this time and place. to friend and foe alike, that the torch has been passed to a new generation of Americans, born in this century, tempered by war, disciplined by a hard and bitter peace, proud of our ancient heritage, and unwilling to witness or permit the slow undoing of these human rights to which this nation has always been committed, and to which we are committed today at home and around the world. (J. F. Kennedy) (friend and foe: 并列名词前习惯上略 去 冠 词,类指; a hard and bitter peace: 指名词具听者未知的属性; at home: 惯用零位冠词概括指,可比较 at night, 1.1.4) 我们不能 忘 记,我们就是最初那一场革命的子孙。让我的话从此时此地传遍 于友人与敌人中间,那革命的火炬已传到美国一代新人 手 里: 我们这一代出生在这一世纪,锤炼于战火之中,又经受了艰难 险阻的和平条件下的磨练,我们为自己古老的传统而骄傲,我 们不能眼看着、不能允许这些人权被日渐损伤,因为我们的国 家就一直是要致力于维护这些人权,而今天,无论在国内、在 全世界, 我们也是为此而献身的。

Let both sides seek to invoke the wonders of science instead of its terrors. Together let us explore the stars, conquer the deserts, eradicate disease, tap the ocean depths and encourage the arts and commerce. (ibid)(its/the terrors, the ocean depths: 确指复数形式使抽象事物具体化,见2.7.5)让我们双方都来悉心祈求科学创造桩桩奇迹,而不是制造种种恐怖。让我们一起来探查星球、征服沙漠、消灭疾病、开发幽深的海洋,并倡导文学艺术、社会科学与贸易往来。

When she woke to that little bit of truth, fitted into the puzzle of the truths of her life, she looked into vacancy, asked of herself some questions. How little, in all these years she had learnt, how slightly she had crept from her nasty shell of fears, greeds and jealousies! (the truths: 确指复数形式使综合事物分别化; fears, greeds, jealousies:无冠词复数形式也使综合事物分别化,指多种、大量等,见2.7.4) 当她在自己一生各种事理的迷雾中觉察到这一点点道理时,她出神地望着半空,向自己提出一些问题。这些年来,她几乎一直没学到什么,还是没大从她只是充满恐惧、贪婪与猜忌的肮脏的牛角尖里爬出来啊!

可以看出以上许多名词所带冠词有着超出"一"、"这、那"本义的种种意义色采,带或不带冠词的不可数名词也以复数形式取得多种含意。冠词形式的这些扩展用法,加上许多选用,或不用,或省略冠词的惯用法,就使得英语冠词形式更值得我们深入探讨。

本书第二编将系统讨论 a/an, the 的各种扩展用法、零位 冠词形式及不可数名词复数形式带或不带冠词的多种意义。而 第三编将讨论冠词惯用法与大量惯用语中冠词形式的各种规律 现象,以及有趣的不规律现象。

第二编

英语冠词规律用法(I): 扩展用法

第一章 a/an 使得特殊事物一般化

2.1.1 a/an 加专有名词指不确定的一般事物

专有名词指特殊事物,是某单独事物的专用名称,不是一 类事物的名称,本来不会加不定冠词:

Julius Caesar was a Roman statesman, a general and then a dictator, but not an emperor. 凯撒为罗马政治家、将军, 后为独裁统治者, 但未称帝。

但是,为使语言表现力更为丰富,可借用特殊名称指一般事物,指其具特殊事物的属性,这时加用的 a/an 就使特殊能表示一般,使专有名词表示一类事物中不确定的一个:

He is a (second) Caesar in speech and leadership. (LDCE) 他的口才和领导能力象凯撒一样非凡 (是个凯撒式人物)。

George will never be a Napoleon in any walk of life. 乔治无论干哪一行都不会创造出拿破仑那样的业绩。

We need now a Washington, he's a tiger when aroused. 我们需要一个华盛顿那样的人物,他一旦奋起有如猛虎。

The new teacher has the humour of a Dickens. 这位新老师象狄更斯那样幽默。

Tom is a poet, certainly, but he isn't a Byron. 汤姆无疑是个诗人, 但他还不是一位拜仑那样的大诗人。

Your nephew is a talented mechanic, but I don't think he'll become an Edison. 你的侄子是个很有才能的机械工人,但是我看他不会成为爱迪生那样的发明家。

She felt like an Alice in wonderland. 她感觉自己成了进入仙境的爱丽思 (爱丽思为一著名童话中的女孩)。

"a/an+姓名"除可表示"象……那样的一个人"以外,还可以指姓该姓氏属该家族)或叫该名字的人,一个不确定的人(指听者未知的人,见下节)。

It is the nature of a Forsyte to be ignorant that he is a Forsyte. (Galsworthy) 福赛特家族的成员都有这样的天性,就是自己不知道自己属于福赛特家族。

I've often wondered if Arthur was really a Burton. 我常常疑心阿瑟 (名) 是否真是伯顿 (姓) 家的孩子。 (疑为其母私通外人所生)

Is there a Lin in your class? 你们班上有一个姓林的学生吗?

"a/an+地名"可以表示"象……那样的一个地方"或"象在……那里发生的那样一次事件"。

True, there are several big cities in our province, but there doesn't seem to be a Shenyang or an Anshan. 不错, 我省有些大城市,但看来没有沈阳、鞍山这样的大工业城。

It's quite possible that this detente will end up in a Munich someday. 很可能,这种缓和有朝一日会导致另一次慕尼黑事件(指姑息侵略,出卖受侵略国)。

Perhaps we can strike them a telling blow then, but there wouldn't be a Waterloo. 然后,我们将给他们以沉重打击,但是还不能象在滑铁卢那样使他们全军覆灭。

2.1.2 a/an 加专有名词指听者未知的一般事物

同样,我们也可以用"a/an+专有名词"指一类事物中听者未知的一个,即指称具某独特事物之属性的一个一般事物,该事物在说话人虽已知悉,但对听话人还是初次听到的或未确知的:

(Yes.) There is a Lin in our class. (有啊,) 我们班上有个姓林的同学。

There is a Mr James Hall to see you. 有一位詹姆士·霍尔先生要见您。

She is a teacher, a Miss Reid from Chicago. 她是一位教师,从芝加哥来的一位理德小姐。

She has married a Jackson. 她嫁给了一个姓杰克逊的男人。

A certain Brown told me that. 一个姓布朗的人把这事告诉我的。

His wife is a Kennedy (a member of the Kennedy family) 他的妻子是肯尼迪家族的一员。

Little did he expect that they should encounter a Water-loo when news of victory was still pouring in. 正当胜利的消息还在源源不断传来之时,他哪里想到他们竟会遭受到滑铁卢式的全军溃败。

指具听者未知属性的事物,亦属"指听者未知":不定冠词 a/an 也常加于带定语的人名、地名等专有名词前,该定语表示的是听话人未知或未曾明确的性质、状态或关系。

But he was a different John Smith from the one you know. 可是他并非你所认识的那个约翰·史密斯,他是另外一位。

He was met at the door by an angry Isabel, who demanded to know what he meant by coming home at that hour.

一进门他就碰见了怒气冲冲的伊萨贝拉,她问他为什么这个钟

点才回家。

He was coming along with the news when at the street corner he ran into an anxious Mary. 他带着这个消息赶来途中,在拐角上碰到了焦急的玛丽。

It was a new Russia that he found on his return. 他回来时,发现俄罗斯完全变了样。

Having been abroad for thirty years, he longs to come home and settle in a China which he knows to be radically changed. 他在国外呆了30年,一心向往着回到中国定居,他知道中国已发生根本的变化。

Those two men are for me symbols of an England that I love ... I am not sure that there ever was such an England. (M. Arlen) (such an England, 具有一种 "such" 属性的 England, 听者未知,见3.1.7)对于我,这两个人是我所热爱的英格兰的象征 …… 我不知道是不是真的有过 这样的 英格兰。

带 a/an 指不确定或听者未知的人或事物的 专有 名词,有时和带 the 指已知事物的专有名词同在一句,互相呼应(该人名、地名等本不带定冠词 the,加用它是为了强调已知、确定):

There she made the acquaintance of a Julius Caesar (a man called Julius Caesar) — not to be confused with the Julius Caesar. 在那里,她认识了一个朱利阿斯·凯撒(一个名叫朱利阿斯·凯撒的人)——不要把那人和古罗马的朱利阿斯·凯撒弄混了。

The China that was sunk deep in feudalism has been replaced by a China that is building socialism. 深陷在封建制度中的旧中国已换作一个建设社会主义的新中国。

2.1.3 the 使专有名词借作普通名词

对于原来不带冠词的人名、地名,事实上在加定冠词 the 时,也可能是在使特殊事物一般化,即借用单独的事物之名来指称一类事物中已知、确定的一个:

Will Italy give us the new Dante, who will mark the hour of birth of this new, proletarian era? (Engels) 意大利是否会给我们这位宣告无产阶级新纪元诞生的新的但丁呢?

Mozart was called the Raphael of music. 莫扎特 被称为音乐界的拉斐尔。

Is he the Jones who is a writer? (Is he that one Jones among all those Joneses?) 他就是那位作家琼斯吗?

You must be the Mr Brown about whom he has so often talked. 您一定是他常说的那位布朗先生。

The John I met yesterday wasn't the John with whom we were at school together. 我昨天见到的约翰不是咱们中(小)学时同学的那个约翰。

She was no more like the Julia of their first years of marriage. (She seemed to be different girls called Julia—different Julias—at different times.) 朱莉娅已不再是他们结婚最初几年那个朱莉娅那样了。

The Paris I'm talking about is in Kentucky. 我所说的巴里斯在美国肯塔基州。

The street reminded one a little of the London which Thackeray knew on that side of the river. 那条街使人隐约想起萨克雷所熟知的、河对岸的伦敦城。

The England which he found on his return differed greatly from the England of his schooldays. 他归来时发现英国已大大不同于他幼年上学时的英国了。

2.1.4 the 强调特定属性或特殊针对性

另一方面, "the+原不带冠词的专有名词"也可能仍指某单独事物 (并非一类中的一个),有时是强调其一时的特定属性、状态:

The frightened Mary cried for help. 惊恐的玛丽喊人来救她。

The curious John was eager to hear the news. 好奇的约翰急于听到消息。

The disappointed Edward turned home. 大失所望的爱德华 转回家中。

有时又是强调其固有的特定属性、关系等:

The restless Byron travelled all over Europe. 闲不住的拜伦行迹遍于欧洲。

The timid Martha said nothing. 胆怯的玛莎什么也没说。

He slapped him on the shoulder, which startled and slightly annoyed the prim George Augustus. 他拍拍奥古斯塔斯的肩膀,这可把一本正经的乔治·奥古斯塔斯吓了一跳, 不惹得他有点不高兴。

The elder Pitt has taken away the younger Pitt. 大皮特把小皮特带走了。

历史上留下一些人名,在后边加带定冠词 the 的 形容词,形容词开头大写:

Alexander the Great (古希腊、马其顿) 亚历山大大帝 Louis the Pious (古罗马皇帝) 虔诚路易

Richard the Lion-hearted (十字军东征时代英王) 狮心理 杳德

但某些常用形容词(多带感情色彩)构成的人名、地名前不加 the,该形容词有时开头大写:

young Thomas 小托马斯 poor Tom 可怜的汤姆

honest John 诚实的约翰 dear little Dot 亲爱的小多特 Cruel Nero 残忍的奈罗 Immortal Marx 不朽的马克思

Rare Ben Jonson 稀世奇才本。琼森

Merry England 快乐的 英格兰 Old Philadelphia 古老的费城 (美国)

不带定语的人名也可以加定冠词 the,强调其特殊针对性,表示"就是所说的那位"等意义:

"It was Albert Einstein, you know."—"Was he, indeed? The Albert Einstein?"—"Yes, the Albert Einstein." "你可知道那是阿尔贝特·爱因斯坦啊!"——"真的,是他?那位大名鼎鼎的阿尔贝特·爱因斯坦?"——"是啊,正是那位阿尔贝特·爱因斯坦。"

"That's Mr William Morris."—"What, the Mr William Morris?" "那是威廉·莫里斯先生。""是吗,就是那位大诗人威廉·莫里斯先生本人吗?"

I was told you were Mr Crosby; are you the Mr Crosby? (Eckersley) 我曾听人说过您是克罗斯比先生,您是他们所说的克罗斯比先生吗 (参见 1.2.4)?

2.1.5 a/an, the 指示专有名词转作普通名词

许多专有名词可转用为普通名词,而且是可数名词,这时它们就必须加a/an或the,来指示其为该类事物中或属不确定、或属听者未知、或者属确定的一个(一些)。特别是文学家、艺术家的名字常转指他的作品,著名的工厂名常转指其产品:

There was a rack of books and among them he saw a Hemingway. 有一书架书籍,他在其中看见一本海明威的小说。

Have you got a complete Lu Xun? 你有一套鲁迅全集吗?

The painting on my wall is a Rembrandt! (LDCE) 在我墙上挂的画是伦勃朗的作品!

Lanny has sold them an especially fine Goya. 兰尼把一幅非常好的戈亚作品卖给他们了。

He drove a Ford. 他开着一辆福特汽车。

I bought an Underwood yesterday. 昨天我买了一台安德伍德打字机。

The Van Dyke spoken about is in the Hermitage. 原来谈的万·戴克那幅画现在收藏在修道院。

2.1.6 由指自然界独有事物转指一般事物

表示人人尽知的某些自然界独有事物的一些名词,平时都要加定冠词 the 使用, the sun, the moon, the earth, the sky the horizon, the universe, the world 等。即使该名词带定语,仍可用 the 指示其为人人皆知的确定事物:

Not a cloud specked the deep blue sky above. 上面深蓝色的天空中没有一点云影。

Above the horizon soared the round yellow moon. 那圆圆的、黄澄澄的月亮从地平线上冉冉升起。

但如果我们要用该独特事物指称一般事物时,我们还是要改用不定冠词 a/an,例如当我们指该类事物中不确定的一个、一种等:

Life could evolve only if the planet is the right distance from its sun. With a weaker sun than our own, the planet would have to be closer to it. (a 使 sun — 般 化,转指 — 恒星) 只有在行星与其恒星距离适中的情况下,生命才会发生。如为一弱于我们的太阳的恒星,该行星就要离它近些。

A full moon is an all night moon. 满月整夜都照在空中。 A red sky at night is a sailor's delight. (谚语) 晚上天 空发红,水手们就高兴(预兆好天气,宜于航行)。

I want to see a better world. 我要看到一个更好的世界。

The campus becomes a self-contained world rather isolated from the ordinary community. 校园成了一个与一般社会隔绝的、独立的小天地。

当我们强调该事物是这一类中听者未知的一个、或该事物在当时当地具有听者未知的属性时,我们也要加用 不 定 冠 词 a/an:

You have opened a new horizon for me. (a 使 horizon 一般化,转指一类中的一个) 你为我展现了一个新天地。

Have you ever seen such an immense red sun? 你看见过这样大的红太阳吗?

A late November sun was breaking through the cloud. 十一月末的太阳正要冲出云层,照向大地。

It was a glorious night, with a great full moon gleaming in a purple sky. 那是个美好的夜晚,圆圆的大月亮照耀在紫色的空中。

What do quasars reveal about the universe? They promise finally to settle the conflict between an evolving or an unchanging universe. 关于宇宙,类星体给了我们什么启示呢? 类星体可能最终结束人们所说这是一个发展中的宇宙或者是一个不变的宇宙的争论。

They have a world to win. (Manifesto of the Communist Party) 他们获得的将是整个世界(《共产党宣言》)。

It's a small world after all. 世界究竟不大, 我们又 得相逢。

第二章 "免去冠词 (或只用 the) + 词头大写"使得一般事 物特殊化

2.2.1 用于"独指"的家庭成员

在一个家庭里,某家庭成员 常常 只是 一人,如"父亲"、"母亲"等。因而,在自家人之间,指称这样的独有家人时,不存在其为一类中确定的或不确定的问题,就无 需 使 用 the 或 a/an,于是,所用虽属可数名词单数,这时也免去其平常必需的冠词。事实上,这种指称家中单一成员的名词,已经是"独指"性质,书面上其词头多用大写字母,相当专有名词:

I shall tell Mother about it. 我要把这事告诉母亲。

Mom, I bought Dad a new easy chair for his birthday and put it here by the table a few minutes ago. (Mom 作为呼语也不带冠词) 妈,爸要过生日,我给爸新买了一把安乐椅,刚才放在这儿,放在这桌子旁边的。

"There is Father coming," cried the two young Cratchits.
(Dickens) "爸爸来了!"克来济慈的两个孩子喊道。

I have received a letter from Uncle. 我收到叔叔来的一封信。

Aunt was always at law with her tanants. (Thackeray) 姑姑总是跟她的房户打官司。

这种免去冠词而成"独指"的用法也扩大到指家中婴儿、保姆、厨师、车夫等人:

How is baby? (甘希娜)(词头可不大写) 小孩怎么样? Ask nurse to put the child to bed. 让保姆带孩子去睡 吧。

Would you like to go and see if cook has got your dinner ready? (Poutsma) 你去看看厨师把你的饭做好了没有,好吗?

Coachman comes out with his waybill. (Hughes) 马车夫拿出他的乘客单。

Nurse is cross. Cook has given notice. (Zandvoort) 保姆生气了。厨师提出要辞去。

2.2.2 家人与外人之间独指家庭成员

家里人对外人谈家中成员时,一般不能用无冠词又无其他 限定词的名词形式:

Only the three of us stayed at home: my mother and I and the cook. 我们只有三个人在家: 母亲、我和厨师。

但在较随便的家常话中,也常用无冠词又无其他限定词的"独指"名词,外人自然解其所指:

Ours is a big family. There are Grandfather, Grandmother, Father, Mother, Big Brother, Sister and I. 我们家是个大家庭。有祖父、祖母、父、母、哥哥、妹妹和我。

Cook was excellent and she did everything well. 我家的厨师好极了,她做什么都做得很好。

She had been a servant in our family before I was born and had been nurse to my sisters Marie and Yvonne and to me. (Eckersley) 我出生以前她就是我们家的女仆,她当过我两个姐姐玛丽和伊凤的保姆,又当过我的保姆。

甚至外人对家里人谈话或外人对其他外人的叙述中,也可 用无冠词名词指称该家庭某单一成员:

Is Master in? 主人在吗?

Is Mistress at home? 女主人在家吗?

"Soup! Hot noodles!" Mother cried. Every time a packet left her hands, the hateful yellow face of the officer who had taken her son away flared up in her mind. "买汤啊! 热面条!"老母亲喊道。每次一打传单出手时,那带走她儿子的军官的可恶的黄脸就闪现在她脑海中。

2.2.3 其他范围内的独有人员和独有事物

除家庭以外,在其他较小集体范围内,如在机关、学校、饭馆内,指称可理解到的该集体某单独人员时,也常常用这种免去冠词的"独指"名词:

Has section chief given instructions on this point? 关于这一点,科长有指示吗?

Teacher was very pleased with my work. (Eckersley) 老师对我的功课很满意。

"Tea or coffee, sir?" says head-waiter, coming round to Tom. (Hughes) "先生,喝茶还是喝咖啡?"服务员班长来到汤姆跟前问道。

除人员以外,一定范围内其他某种单独的事物,有时也可用免去冠词的"独指"形式来指称:

Boys and girls leave school at four o'clock. (Boys and girls 就读的学校) 小学生们四点离校。

但是: The visitors left the school at four o'clock. (The visitors 不属学校范围内人员) 参观的人四点离开了学校。

Congress is not wiser than Parliament. (R. W. Emerson) (R. W. Emerson, 1803 — 82, 美国哲学家、政论家)国会(指美国的)并不比议会(指美国人刚脱离的英国的议会)高明。

但是: At a congress of the League, held in London in November, 1847, Marx and Engels were commissioned to prepare for publication a complete theoretical and practical

party programme. (再比较: The Communist League ... commissioned the undersigned, at the Congress held in London in November 1847, to draw up ...) 在共产主义者同盟 1847年11月在伦敦召开的代表大会上,马克思与恩格斯 受委托草拟一个准备发表的、完备的、既有理论又有 实践的 党纲。(共产主义者同盟在其 1847年11月在伦敦召开的代表大会上委托我们起草……)

2.2.4 the 加于次生专有名词

专有名词因用于"独指",本来是无需冠词也不带冠 词 的,最常用的大部分人名、地名就没有冠词,我们可以称这些本来的、常用的专有名词为"基本专有名词" (primary proper nouns)如:Zaire 扎伊尔 (刚果河以东), Central Africa 中非洲。

由基本专有名词加复数词尾,或由其加普通名词、或全由普通名词 (书面词头大写)构成的专有名词,可称为"次生专有名词"(secondary proper nouns),它们多须带定冠词 the。人名仅复数者带 the,地名中带 the 者多为复合地名,其他 专有名词带 the 者较多。也有一些开始时带 the 的次生专有名词,由于使用频繁,逐渐被人们把所带的 the 丢掉,用起来较灵便,也符合了大多数专有名词无冠词的形式。如从 the Congo (Zaire) River "刚果河"(即扎伊尔河)得名的(the)Congo"刚果"(在刚果河以西,与扎伊尔二国皆从该河名取其国名,作为国名的 Congo 原习惯带 the,现可去掉)。

对比下列无冠词专有名词 (左) 与带定冠词 the 的专有名词 (右,皆次生专有名词);

人名

Alexandre Dumas ("Dumas pere" or "Dumas fils") 亚 历山大・仲马("大仲马"、

人名复数;船名

the Dumas 大仲马与小仲马 父子(法国小说家)(非英语 人名、地名音译,要按原语种 "小仲马"同名) Mr Green 格林先生

Gilbert Stuart 吉尔伯特·斯图亚特 (美国画家)

Queen Elizabeth 伊丽莎白 女王

前有称号的人名

King Edward 国王爱德华 (英国)

(the) Czar Alexander 沙皇亚 历山大 (俄国)

St. John (圣经中的) 圣徒 约翰; 圣约翰(加拿大地名)

大洲、国家

North America 北美洲
Britain 英国
Holland 荷兰(Holland 原为
一省份名)

山峰,海岛

Jolmo Lungma (Everest) 珠 穆朗玛峰 (国外原称 Mount Everest)

Mont Blanc 勃朗峰 (阿尔 卑斯山脉最高峰)

但是 the Matterhorn 马特霍恩峰 (阿尔卑斯山脉另一高峰)

读音)

the Grimms 格林兄弟 (德国 童话家)

the Stuarts 斯图亚特王朝 (英国)

the Queen Elizabeth 伊丽莎 白女王号(船)

后有普通名词、形容词的人名

Edward the Confessor 忏悔者爱德华(英王绰号)

Alexander the Great 亚历山 大大帝(古希腊)

St. John the Baptist (圣经中的) 施洗人圣约翰

洲、国复数形式

the Americas 南、北美
the United States 美国
the Netherlands 荷兰 (正式
名称; 原义"低地")
山脉、群岛 (复数形式)

the Himalayas (the Himalaya mountains) 喜马拉雅山脉

the Alps (南欧) 阿尔卑斯山脉(Alp 原义"高山",为此, alpinist 为"登山运动员")

the Balkans 巴尔干山脉

分子

Greenland 格陵兰

Iceland 冰岛

Sicily (意大利) 西西里岛

Cyprus (地中海) 塞浦 路 斯

岛

Puerto Rico (中美) 波多黎

各

Long Island 长岛(其西端为

纽约市区的一部分)

湖 名

Oneida Lake (美) 奥奈达 湖

Lake Success (纽约附近) 成功湖

Lake Superior (美、加间) 苏必利尔湖

Lake Ontario (美、加间) 安 大略湖

Lake Leman (瑞士) 利曼湖 (即日内瓦湖)

Lake Baikal (苏联) 贝加尔 湖

海港,海湾

Marseille Port (法) 马赛港

Port Said (埃及) 塞得港

the British Isles 英伦三岛 the Canaries (the Canary

Islands) (大西洋东北) 加那利群岛

the West Indies 西印度群岛

半 岛

the Balkan Peninsula 巴尔干

the Crimea (苏联) 克里米亚 半岛 (全称 the Crimea Peninsula)

海洋、江河名, 某些湖名

the Atlantic 大西洋

the Caribbean Sea (中美) 加勒比海

the Mississippi (River) 密西 西比河

the Panama Canal 巴拿马运河

the Ontario (Lake) 安大略湖

the Leman (Lake) 利曼湖

the Baikal (Lake) 贝加尔湖

海峡、河峡

the Mozambique Channel 奠 桑比克海峡

the English Channel 英吉利

Pearl Harbour (美) 珍珠港 (port 指商港、军港; Harbour 指天然港口)

Tokyo Bay 东京湾 但 the Persian Gulf 波斯湾 (gulf 比 bay 大)

城市、街道、机场

Los Angeles (美国) 洛杉矶 (Los 原西班牙语冠词)

(Le) Havre (英吉利海峽南岸 法港口) 勒阿弗尔 (Le 原法 语冠词)

Downing Street (英, 政府所 在, 伦敦的) 唐宁街 Broadway (纽约)百老汇大街 但 the Strand (伦敦) 河沿 街

Beijing Airport 北京机场 London Port 伦敦机场

议会、国会

Parliament (英) 议会
(the) Congress (美国等)国会
但 the Diet (日本等) 议会

海峡

the Dover Straits 都弗海峡 (英吉利海峡最窄处)

the Taiwan Strait(s) 台湾海峡 (复数形式与单数形式通用)

the Sanmen Gorge 三门峽 沙漠、建筑

the Sahara (非洲) 撒哈拉 沙漠

the Gobi (中国西北) 戈壁 沙漠

the British Museum 大英博 物馆

the Lincoln Memorial 林肯 纪念馆

the Pentagon (美,国防部所 在,华盛顿的)五角大楼(原 义"五角")

the Beijing Station 北京车 站

但英国著名车站 不带 the: Paddington Station (伦敦 西北)派丁顿车站

机关、团体

the Senate (美国) 参议院
the BBC 英国广播公司
the Ford Foundation 福特
基金会

英、美杂志

Time (美)《时代》杂志
Life (美)《生活》杂志
Punch (英種画周刊)《笨拙》
Newsweek (美)新闻周刊
Reader's Digest (美)读者
文摘

非英美报刊: 有专有 名词构成者

Indian Express 印度快报
Pravda 真理报(俄文原义"真理")

China Daily (英文) 中国日 报

Beijing Review (英文) 北 京周报

主要节日

Christmas 圣诞节

Easter 复活节
New Year's Day/Eve 元旦/
除夕
May Day 五一国际劳动节
National Day 国庆节
Independence Day (美)独
立节

日报、周报(... Weekly)等
the Times (英) 泰晤士报
the New York Times 纽约
时报
the Washington Post 华盛

the Washington Post 华盛 顿邮报

the Workers' Weekly 工人 周报

the Quarterly Review 评论 季刊

非英美报刊,全由普通 名词构成者

the People's Daily 人民日报 the Red Flag 《红旗》杂志 但 New Times (苏联)《新 时代》杂志

Daily News (巴基斯坦) 每 日新闻

非英美节日. 休息日
the Spring Festival 春节
the Mid-Autumn Festival
中秋节

the Dragon Boat Festival 端午节

the Sabbath 安息日(犹太教 徒的星期六,基督教徒的星 期日)

the Lord's Day 主日 (星期日)

2.2.5 the 加于由 of 短语构成的专有名词

国名、山名、岛名、湖名、海湾名等各种地名。虽有很多不 带定冠词 the,但当它们由 of 介词短语构成时,一律要在整个 复合地名前加定冠词 the。比较:

马来西亚联邦

the Mount of Olives (巴勒 斯坦) 橄榄山

the Isle of Wight (英)威 特岛(在英吉利海峡英海岸 边)

the Lake of Geneva 日内瓦 湖

the Bay of Biscay 比斯开湾 (东为法国,南为西班牙)

the Cape of Good Hope 好 望角(非洲南端大西洋、印 度洋间)

the Port of London 伦敦机 场

the Federation of Malaysia | the British Commonwealth of Nations 英联邦(包括 马来西亚)

> Mount Snowdon (英。威尔 士) 斯诺敦山

> Tierra del Fuego (南美南 端)火地岛(西班牙语 del 相当 of the)

Lake Leman (即日内瓦湖) 利曼湖

Hudson Bay 哈得孙湾(加 拿大北部,向北连接北冰洋)

Cape Horn 合恩角(南美南 端火地岛南,大西洋、太平 洋间)

London Port/Airport 伦敦 机场 (简称)

2.2.6 the 加普通名词转为专有名词

定冠词可以使普通名词特殊化, 书面词头大写, 构成专有 名词。单个普通名词书面词头大写可加 the 构成专有名词,两 个以上普通名词也然,形容词加普通名词也可以这样 构 成 专 有名词。而在复合专有名词的组成词中有一个是专有名词 者 (即 使 其 他 组 成 词为普通名词或形容词),就多不 加 冠 词。

比较下表左、右两栏中无 the 与带 the 的单独一词 构成的专有名词:

本为专有名词

Britain 英国

(Great Britain 大不列颠)

Europe 欧洲

Portsmouth 朴次茅斯(英南海岸,原义"港口")

London 伦敦

Gibraltar (西班牙南端,英 自治领) 直布罗陀

Malacca (马来亚南端, 苏门 答腊对岸) 马六甲

Spain 西班牙

Portugal 葡萄牙

Iberia 伊比利亚 (西班牙古名)

Turkey 土耳其

Gallipoli 加利波利(在半岛南岸,1915—1916年间协约国远征该地)

Amsterdam 阿姆斯特丹(荷 兰首都)

Argentina 阿根廷

本为普通名词

the Empire (the British

Empire) 大英帝国

the Continent 欧洲大陆

the Channel (the English

Channel) 英吉利海峡

the City 伦敦商业区

the Straits (原指大西洋、地中海间)直布罗陀海峡, (现指印度洋、中国南海间) 马六甲海峡

the Peninsula (英参加对拿破仑作战时指西班牙、葡萄牙所在的)伊比利亚半岛; (第一次世界大战时指土耳其在欧洲小块领土上的)加利波利半岛

the Hague (原义 "庭院")海 牙(荷兰政府与国际法庭所 在)

the Argentine (原形容词 "银的")阿根廷别名

2.2.7 the 使普通名词等组成专有名词

再比较下表左、右两栏中无 the 与带 the 的 复 合 专 有 名词:

组合词中有一 专有 名词, "独指" 意义已明,多不加 the

专有名词+普通名词

Buckingham Palace 白金汉 宫(伦敦英王室宫殿)

Hyde Park (伦敦)海德公园 Bei Hai Park (北京) 北海 公园

Beijing Zoo 北京动物园
Bunker Hill 本喀山(美东北,
独立战争初美军曾败于此)
Scotland Yard (简 称 the
Yard) 伦敦警察厅

Oxford Road 牛津路 (the Oxford Road 通往牛 津之路)

专有名词+普通名词

Tiananmen Square 天安门 广场

Westminister Abbey 威斯敏斯特教堂(伦敦,名人国葬处)

组成词皆非专有名词, the 加于开头大写的各名词等前,表示"独指"

普通名词+普通名词

the Summer Palace 顾和园 the Palace Museum 故宫博 物馆

the People's Park 人民公园
the Yellowstone National
Park (美) 国立黄石公园
(落矶山脉中)

the Coal Hill (北京) 景山 原名"煤山")

但有少数惯于不加冠词:

Pearl Harbour (美,夏威夷) 珍珠港

Cape Town (好望角) 开普 敦 (市)

Gold Coast 黄金海岸 (现为加纳共和国,位于西非洲,南临几内亚湾)

形容词+普通名词

the Red Square (莫斯科) 红场

the West End 伦敦西区(华 贵住宅区)

普通名词+专有名词

Cape Verde 佛得角 (西非洲西端; Verde 原义"绿色的")
Mount Vernon 维依山 (美,华盛顿附近,华盛顿总统家乡、墓地)

Lake Michigan 密执安湖(美国、加拿大边境五大湖之一) 形容词+专有名词

South America 南美洲
Central Australia 澳大利亚
中部

East Asia 东亚,亚洲东部 New Zealand 新西兰

Greater London 大伦敦(包括郊区,郊区比市区大六倍)
Ancient China 古代中国,古老的中国
Merry England 欢乐的英格

Sunny France 明媚的法兰 西 形容词+普通名词

the North Cape 北角(北欧, 挪威北端, 临北冰洋)

the Rocky Mountains (the Rockies) (美西北) 落矶山脉 (原义:"岩山")

the Great Lake 大湖 (大西洋的别名)

形容词+普通名词

the Antarctic (Continent) 南 极洲 (或称 Antarctica)

the Far East 远东
the New World 新世界 (美
洲)

the Great Wall (中国)长城 the Great Divide (美) 落矶 山分水岭

the Forbidden City (北京) 紫禁城

the White House (美总统 府) 白宫

the Dark Ages (the Middle Ages) (欧洲) 黑暗的中世纪

<u>*</u>

第三章 the 使语句中未确定的 事物特定化

2.3.1-4 最高级形式等不能决定是"确指"

2.3.1 带定语不一定是"确指"

有或没有定语的名词对它限定或修饰,都可能属于"不确指"或"指听者未知"。

Of this more will be said at a later point. 关于这一点,以后将详谈。(不确定的"以后",或仅说话人知道的"以后一定时间")

I wish you would stretch/strain a point to oblige me. 我希望您破例照顾我一下。(不确指)

He has a point there. 他这话有点道理。(指听者未知)

That's a fine(nice)/knotty point. 这是个很微妙/难解决的问题。(指具听者未知属性的事物)

另一方面,属于"确指"的名词,虽多为语句中确定下来(前 文提过或本身带定语对其加以限定)的事物,但是,语句未予 确定(前文既未提到,本身又无定语)的名词,仍然可属"确 指",即指一定时间、一定处所、一定关系决定其为相对确定的 事物,这就是"相对确指"的用法:

Here lies the point. (NDEC) (当前的)问题就在这里。

让我们先讨论一下带各种定语的名词属不确指、属指听者 未知,或属确指的情况,然后再研究"相对确指"(2.3.7)。

名词的前位定语主要有形容词、分词、数词、代词等(具代词定语的名词前冠词的用法见3.1.1等)。名词的后位定语主要是后位形容词、分词或介词短语、定语从句等。带各种类

型定语的名词,都既可为不确指的(或听者未知的),又可为确指的名词。

1) 带形容词、分词定语:

Farther was a garden blazed with flowers. 再往前去是一座鲜花盛开、灿烂夺目的花园。(指听者未知)
People were led out of the blazing building. 人们从那着火的楼房中被带领出来。(blazing 已转形容词)

2) 带数词定语:

A mere two miles isn't too far to walk. 仅仅两英里, 走着去不算远。(指具听者未确认的属性)

He came here all the twenty miles on foot. 这二十英里他一路走着来的。

3) 带后位形容词、介词短语定语:

Farther south was a monster emporium ablaze with light. 再往南去是个灯火辉煌的巨大商场。(指听者未知) The house ablaze (on fire) is next door to mine. 那 失火的房子就在我隔壁。

4) 带定语从句:

She is a very diligent pupil which her sister is not. 她是个很勤奋的学生,她的姐姐却不是。(指具听者未知的属性)

She did it like the clever girl which/that she undoubtedly is. 她很聪明地这样做了,她无疑是这样一个聪明的女孩子。

There wasn't a single moment when he wasn't keeping himself busy. 他无时无刻不在忙这忙那。(不确指) I came out to meet you the moment I saw you coming. 我一看见你,立刻就出来迎接你。

2.3.2 "形容词最高级等+名词"不一定属"确指"

带形容词最高级定语的名词,以及 带 序 数 词、带形容词 only 的名词一般属 "确指",加定冠词 the; 但有时可能 属 "不确指"或"指听者未知",加不定冠词 a/an:

It was the most beautiful view I had ever seen. 这是 我平生见过的最美的景色。

Surely it was a most beautiful view. (指听者未知)那的确是一幅很美的景色。

I believe it to be one of the most enjoyable parties we have ever attended. 我想这是我们参加过的最愉快的几次宴会中的一次。

He thanked his host for a most enjoyable party. (指 听者未知) 他感谢主人举行这样一次非常愉快的宴会。

(a most ... 限用于有主观判断余地的形容词,不能说 a most tall boy 或 a tallest boy)

This grammar seems to be the best (one) of its kind.
这本语法看来是这类书中最好的一本。

The novel turned out to be a best seller. (固定词组) (指听者未知) 这部小说成了一种畅销书。

Have you chosen him a best man? (固定词组) (不确指) 你给他选好一位男傧相了吗?

(He occupied the second leading post. 他当第二把手。

She took a second helping of meat. (指听者未知) 她 又吃了一份肉。

I'll also try a seventh time! (指听者未知) 我 也 要 再 做一番第七次的努力!

It's a second hand. (固定词组)(指听者未知) 那是一件 旧货。

There's going to be a first night. (固定词组)(指听

者未知) 有一出戏要举行首次演出。

He was the only son to the king. 他是国王的独生子。
The other boy was also an only son, the only son of a minister. (指听者未知) 另一个男孩也是个独生子,是一个大臣的独生子。

2.3.3 is the happiest 与 is happiest 等

形容词最高级作表语后面没有所修饰的名词(或代词)时, 表示实际事物者(略去名词或代词),带定冠词 the 以表示"确 指",仅表示事物属性者,则不能带冠词,因其非名词性质,没 有所指实际事物的问题:

He is the happiest (one) of them all. (表示实际的人, 确指) 他是他们所有的人中间最幸福的(一个)。

He is happiest when left alone. (仅表示属性) 他是在只有自己一个人的时候才最快活。

The school is the strongest (school) on mathematics in the city. 这所学校是全市数学教学最好的 (学校)。

The school is strongest on mathematics. 这所学校以数学教学为最好。(比其他学科教学)

Plain speaking is the best (thing that) you can do. 直言不讳是你最好的办法。

| Plain speaking is best when the minds are made up. 主意既已打定,以直言不讳为最好。

The storm was the most violent (storm) we had that year. 那场风暴是那一年最猛烈的 (一场风暴)。

The storm was most violent towards evening. 那暴风雨在傍晚时猛烈已极。

副词最高级不会有暗含的名词词组性质,其前可不用 the,但口语常带 the:

The person who works (the) hardest should receive the greatest reward. (Wood) 工作最努力的人应得到最大的奖赏。

2.3.4 表示比较范围的名词加 the 问题

形容词、副词最高级及比较级后(或前)常随有表示比较范围的名词,这种名词多属确指,带定冠词 the,但如所指范围不明确时,就不用定冠词:

The two are the best of friends. (复数不确指)两人是最要好的朋友。

Of the two (确指,数词相当名词,或可视为后略名词), Tom is perhaps the more affectionate. 他们两人中,可能是汤姆更重感情。

That very evening Amelia wrote him the tenderest of long letters. 就在当天晚上,阿梅丽雅给他写了一封最热情的长信。

She had the sweetest of smiles. She spoke in the softest of voices. 她的微笑甜美极了。她的声音温柔极了。

He is the most dangerous of enemies.(ALD) 他是最危险的敌人。

Most girls work harder than (the) boys. 女生多比男生用功。 (加定冠词时,指全体,不加时,指一般)

2.3.5—6 most/least, best/worst, first/last 带 the 与否

2.3.5 指量代词 most 是否带 the

most 构成形容词、副词最高级时,其 前 加 the 或 a/an,已如上述。但 most 本为指量代词,本是 many, much 的 最 高 级形式,作为指量代词,它可以独立担任句中成分,也可以用作名词的定语。指量代词 most 独立作为句中 主 语、表语、宾语

等成分时,可带 the (属确指),也可不带冠词 (相当复数不确指或指听者未知).

The most are on our side. (主语,确指) 大多数人 站在我们一边。

Most were saved. (主语,指听者未知)大多数人都得救了。 Most like it. (主语,指听者未知)大多数人都喜欢它。

That's the most I can do. (表语,确指) 我尽了最大努力。

Which is *most*—31,13 or 30? (表语,表示属性) 31、13 和 30,哪个数最大?

Do the most you can. (宾语,确指) 尽你最大的努力吧。 We spent most of March ploughing. (宾语,指听者未知) 三月份大部分时间,我们都在耕地。

"most (定语) + 名词"作主语时多不带 the:

Most mistakes were found in your composition. 大部分错误出在你的作文里。(虽可说 The most mistakes, 更常说 Most of the mistakes... 错误中的大部分)

再比较: Most people think so. 多数人这样认为。或 Most of the people/The greater part of the people I know are aware of the fact. 我认识的大多数人都知道这事。most of the 中的 of 与 the 不能只去掉一个,不同于 all (of) the(见 3.1.6)。

European countries are, for the most part, tired of war' 欧洲各国多厌恶战争。(其中 for the most part 为惯用语。)

"most + 名词"的词组担任非主语成分时,如我们强调其所指事物对于主语或其他成分的相对确定性,可在该词组前加the,也可以不这样强调而不用冠词:

You've made (the) most/fewest mistakes. 你的错误最多/ 最少。 Those who have the most money are not always the happiest. 最有钱的人不一定是最幸福的人。

The youngest and the most lovely of his children took (the) most interest in the toys. (形容词最高级 the most lovely 中, most 不是指量代词; most interest 中的 most 是指量代词,定语) 他的孩子中最小、最可爱的小孩最喜欢这些玩具。

2.3.6 best/worst, first/last 等是否带 the

best 与 worst 作介词宾语时, the 可有可无.

He's a fool at (the) best, and at (the) worst he's a criminal.(LDCE) 至少他是个傻子, 甚至他可能是个罪犯。

与之相仿: At (the) most/least, it costs five pounds. 这东西至多不过/至少也要花 5 镑。

但 in the least 中的 the 必不可少。in the least 用于疑问句、否定句及表怀疑句中,the 有强调意味:

I doubt whether he would be in the least concerned about it. 我怀疑,他对此事可能是毫不关心。

No, nobody would worry in the least. 不会着急的,没有一个人会有一点着急。

下列句中,除at first/last 不带冠词外,其他惯 用 短 语中 first, last, best, worst, most, least 前皆有表示确指的定冠词 the:

At first nobody was in the least concerned about it. (仅 at first 中不用冠词) 起初,没有人对此有丝毫关心。

However, it's beginning, at (long) last, to have the attention of the public. (at long/last 中不用冠词) 但是,这件事终于开始引起公众的注意。

I've insisted upon her innocence from the (very) first.

我从一开始就坚定地认为她是无辜的。

He held on/out to the (very) last. 他坚持到底了。

In the first place I don't want to, in the second place I can't afford to. 首先,我不想这么办,其次,我也办不到。

You'll never hear the last of this. 这件事且完不了呢!

The champion had/got the best/the better in the last part of the fight. 这位冠军在战斗的最后一段占了上风。

If you start a fight with Jim, you may get the worst of it. 如果你找着跟吉姆打架, 你会大吃苦头的。

They'll give you, at the very best/most, five dollars for the watch. 他们买你这块表,至多给你5美元。

I had to make the best of it/myself/the bad bargain. 我只好在不利情况下尽力而为。

They're all making the most of themselves. 他们都在尽自己最大的努力。

I thought his excuse conventional, to say the least of it. 我认为,至少说,他提出的是老一套的借口。

2.3.7-8 the 用于"相对确指"

2.3.7 前未提及、又无定语的"相对确指"

"前文提到"与"前、后位定语的限定"是语句中使名词确定化而属"确指"的两种因素。观察下列句中这两种因素的作用。

The Bird of Time has but a little way

To fly—and lo! the Bird is on the wing.

(E. FitzGerald)

(时间飞鸟只有一段短短的行程,

啊, 你看! 这鸟儿已在展翅凌空!)

The Bird of Time 有后位定语 of Time 使其确定化;而诗

句下一行的 the Bird 就是指上一行提过的 the Bird of Time. 但是 the wing 却是前面未曾提到、又无定语限定的,这一"确指"用法,是根据什么呢?

在很多情况下,对于前文没有提及而且不带任何定语的名词,我们也可以用定冠词 the 来使它特定化:这时,我们指的是当时当地一定联系中具相对确定性的事物。这种确指用法可称"相对确指" (relevant reference,即GCE 所谓的 situational reference:"情景确指")。"相对确指"指由一定情景或抽象关系所确定的各种事物。

1) 衣物、身体的各个部分(包括构成惯用语者)。

I seized/plucked him by the sleeve. 我抓住他的袖子。

Mary gets hot under the collar if you joke about women drivers. 如果你拿女司机开玩笑,玛丽就会生气。

Ever since he lost his job, he's been looking rather down at the heels. 从他失业以来,他的样子一直很狼狈。

He'll find out where the shoe pinches when he tries it. 他自己试试的时候, 就知道苦恼在哪里了。

His talk on race relations hit the nail on the head. 他 关于种族关系的谈话真是说中了要害。

Don't look a gift horse in the mouth. (谚语) 白送的马,不要看它多少牙,老不老。(白送的东西不要挑毛病。)

He's a regular pain in the neck. 他总是个讨厌鬼。

I struck him across the face. 我打了他一个嘴巴。

She's still wet behind the ears. 她还太幼稚呢! (比较:乳臭未干)

I'm up to the ears/eyes in debt. 我负债累累,气都喘不上来了。

Let those smart politicians lead them by the nose. 让那些精明的政客牵着他们的鼻子走吧!

If she hadn't made a slip of the tongue, he wouldn't have known it. 如果不是她说走了嘴,他是不会知道这事的。

It brings the water to my mouth. 这东西让我直流口水。 比较: Her excuse doesn't hold water. 她的借口站不 住脚。

Most lovely flowers everywhere greet the eye (单数,相对确指或看作类指),and most fragrant perfumes fill the air. (the air,自然事物,见下 5)到处是极可爱的花朵赏心悦目,极浓郁的芬芳飘溢空中。

2) 固定设备,固有人员:

Turn on the water/the light/the fire/the gas/the radio. 把 水龙头/电灯/火/煤气/收音机打开。

Look it up in the dictionary. 在词典里查查这个词(短语)。

The child wants to go to the toilet/the W. C. 孩子要上厕所。

Let's take the elevator (美国英语 the lift). 咱们乘电梯吧! Consult the menu first. 咱们先看看菜单吧! (在饭馆)

Who's it at the gate? The doorkeeper or the postman? 在大门口那个人是谁? 是门卫还是邮递员?

What did the doctor say? 大夫怎么说的? (本单位、或就近的、或大家常去诊所、医院的大夫)

3) 相对位置与方向:

Keep to the right/left. 靠右边/左边走。

I saw her far in the rear. 我看见她在大后边。

He took a seat in the front/at the back of the auditorium. 他在礼堂前边/后边坐下来。

The airport borders the city on the south. 机场在市区南面,挨着市区。

China is in the east of Asia. Japan lies to the east of China. 中国在亚洲东部。日本在中国东边。

比较 She's sailing due east. 那船正在向正东方向行驶。 (due) east 作状语不带冠词

4) 当时、当地的事物、问题:

Harrah, the day is ours! 啊, 胜利是我们的了!

The fire alarmed the whole neibourhood. 这场火灾使整个 这一片街道都很惊慌。

That's just the point. 这才是要害呢!

The point is this. 关键问题是这样的。

The work is worth the while/the trouble/the sacrifice. 这件工作值得费这些时间/费这番工夫/作这一牺牲。 (比较 It's worth while doing/worth our while. 这事值得下工夫做/我们下工夫。)

What's the trouble/the matter? 出什么问题了?

There must be something the matter. 一定是有点问题。

Tell me the truth. 对我说真实情况。(当时的真情) (比较谚语: Truth lies at the bottom of the decanter. 酒瓶干了就会露出真情。酒后吐真言。)

5) 自然事物、自然现象:

The surface on which we walk is the ground, or indoors, the floor. As compared with the sea, it is the land, but as compared with the sky it is the earth. 我们在上面走动的这个平面就是地面,在室内就是屋地。对于海来说,它是陆地,但对于天空来说,它是大地。

Don't leave it in the sun, put it to dry in the shade. 不要把它放在阳光下,放在荫凉处晾干它。

Here we have the rains in early summer. 我们这里初夏是雨季。

All cats are grey in the dark. (谚语) 昏天黑地里, 什么优劣、善恶都分不清。

We felt left out in the cold when we learned that we hadn't been invited. 我们得知没有被邀请时,感到是受了冷落。

A widow bird sate (古,=sat) mourning for her love Upon a wintry bough;

The frozen wind crept on above,

The freezing stream below.

There was no leaf upon the forest bare,

No flower upon the ground,

And little motion in the air

Except the mill-wheel's sound. (Shelley)

一只失去伴侣的小鸟啼声啾啾,

为她的爱侣哀啼在严冬的枝头;

冰冷的冬风从她的枝梢拂过,

凛冽的寒溪在她那树下长流。

秃秃的林间已没有一片败叶,

荒凉的地面已没有一朵残花,

那空中万物都已销声匿迹,

只是磨坊的水车声还在低低叹息。

6) 前后相关的句中名词:

As the call, so the echo. (谚语) 你怎样待人,人就怎样待你。

As is the workman, so is the work. (The work shows the workman. (谚语) 什么样的手艺人, 就出什么样活计。(看活计就能看出手艺人。)

It's the early bird that catches the worm. (谚语) 早出 窝的鸟抓到虫子。(捷足先登)

抽象关系中虽无具体"情景",也能决定相关名词为"相对确指"。

2.3.8 惯用短语中表示"相对确指"的 the

the 表示"相对确指",使语句未予确定(前未提及又无定语)的事物特定化,这一用法还见于大量惯用短语。

1) 动词短语:

act the (part of a) lord 摆架子

burn the candle at both ends (起早、熬夜) 过分消耗精力

come to the scratch 站到起跑线上,作好行动准备 do the room/house 收拾房间/房子 give the alarm 发出警报 give somebody the axe/sack 解雇 hold the line 不要挂断电话 lead the way 带路 lead smoebody to the altar 与…… (某女) 结婚 make the bed 铺床 (准备睡觉) make/set the pace 定步速,树榜样 play the fool 干蠢事,装傻相 read the writing on the wall 看出坏事的预兆 set the fashion 创出新式样,开创新风尚 strike the flag 降旗 (致敬或投降) wander/get off the point 离题

2) 介词短语(所列部分短语中名词带定语)
as the(a) result (of) (由于……的) 结果
at the same time (在这) 同时
in the same time 在同样长的时间内,用相同的时间
at the sight of 一看见……就

in the sight of 由……看来,在……心目中by the name of 名叫……in the name of 以……的名义,代表……for the asking 想要便给,备赠from the cradle to the grave 整个一生from the life 写生,照实物画画in the face of 面对……,纵然有着……on the face of it 从表面看来in the main 基本上,大体上on the whole 总的看来in the right/wrong/affirmative/negative 对/错/肯定/否定的

in/on the wane 逐渐衰落
of the first water 第一水的,头等的
on the offensive/defensive 采取攻势/守势
on the rise/fall 在增长/在减退
on the move/march/wing 在活动/在前进/在飞翔
on the alert/lookout/watch 警惕着,戒备着
on/to the contrary 反之/相反的(地)
to the letter 不折不扣地,严格地
to the life 逼真地
to the minute/day 一分不差/一天不差
to the full 充分地,完全地
to the point 中肯

2.3.9 与形容词、副词比较级连用的副词 the

下列两组例句中的 the 在语法上被认为是副词(比较 that 也可为副词, that much = so much)。

1) the 意为 thereby (因之); 多接 for ... 等原因状语:

I'm none the better for taking the pills. 我吃了这药丸,并不觉得好些。

I'm none the better than if I hadn't taken them. 我吃了这药,并不比没吃的时候好些。

I love him all the better for/because of his faults. 虽然他有缺点,我更喜欢他。

He has faults, but I love him none the less. 他有缺点, 但我还是照样喜欢他。

You are all the better for your misfortune. 你虽遭遇不幸,反而更好了。

I'm none the worse for a single failure. 只是这一次失败,于我没有什么影响。

As the hour approached, I grew the more nervous. 预定的时间临近了,我越发紧张起来。

2) 前后呼应的 the, 前者意为 so,后者意 为 by so much (随之),一般前为从句,后为主句,二句皆 可 有 省 略,皆可 正装或倒装,仅代词主语不能置各句最后;

The less (that is) said by outsiders, the better. 局外人越是少说闲话,事情越好办。

The more we are(不说 are we), the merrier shall we be. 咱们人越多,玩得越快活。

The greater (is) the danger, the more must we drive ahead. 越是艰险,我们越是要一往直前。

The sooner the better. 越快越好。

The longer he lives, the more cynical he becomes. 他年纪更大,就更加愤世嫉俗。

The richer a person was reputed to be, the more was she disposed to excuse his faults. 对于一个人,大家越是说他有钱,她就越是乐于原谅他的毛病。(比较 If a person was repu-

ted to be rich, she was the more disposed to excuse his faults. 如果大家说一个人很有钱,她就相应地非常乐于原谅他的毛病。)

第四章 a/an 使得综合、 抽象事物具体化

2.4.1—2 a rainy day/spring与 a mere 2 days/ hours等

2.4.1 季节、月份、周日、三餐等名词前冠词的用法

可数名词表示具体事物者,带不定冠词 a/an,自然容易理解。如个体名词单数,不是带 the,就是带 a/an,总带个冠词: the dog, a dog, an old dog.

可数名词表示抽象事物者,却有些可不带任何冠词,以其单数零位冠词形式出现于语句中,如一些可数抽象名词。Day breaks. (天亮了。) 这些抽象名词仅在指特定的 某 次、某些时加 the,如 the other day (不久前的一天), in the days to come (将来),仅在指不确定或听者未知的一次时加 a/an,如 against a rainy day (以备不时之需),waited for a day of days to dawn (等待那盛大的节日破晓来临)。the与a/an都使这类抽象事物得以具体化。

又如表示季节、月份、周日、节假日、三餐等的抽象名词, 也多用其零位冠词概括指形式,泛指该抽象事物,特别是当时 的、接近当时的该抽象事物,仅在指其他特定者时才加 the,在 指不确定者或强调其属听者未知时加 a/an。

1) 季节,月份:

If winter comes, can spring be far behind?(Shelley) 寒冬

既已来到,阳春宁尚遥遥? (比较 Day dawns. 天新亮了。 Night is/was closing in/falling. 夜色笼罩下来/夜幕正在降临。)

I'll certainly stay until spring/next March. 我一定会留在这里,直到明年春天/明年三月。

March comes in like a lion and goes out like a lamb. 三月初寒风猛烈如虎狼,三月末和风温顺似羔羊。

The spring/March of 1812 was very chilly. 1812 年春/三月很冷。

It was an extremely cold spring/March. 那是个极其寒冷的春天/三月天。

2) 周日:

I hope to see you next Sunday. 我希望下星期日能见到你。

He went there on a Sunday. The next Sunday he was back here. 他是在一个星期日到那里去的。第二个星期日他就回到这里来了。

I saw her last Monday. 我是上星期一见到她的。

They met on the last Monday of the old year. 他们是去年最后那个星期一见面的。

3) 节假日:

Tomorrow comes Christmas/Easter/New Year's Day/May Day. 明天是圣诞节/复活节/元旦/五一节了。

They keep the Russian Easter. 他们过俄罗斯的(东正教的)复活节(春分月圆后第一个星期日,东欧月圆日期与西欧、美国月圆日期可有差异,不同教会自定复活节日期)

We had a splendid Christmas. 我们过了一个非常愉快的圣诞节。

4) 三餐:

Dinner was at an end. 宴会快结束了。

The dinner was served at the Grand Hotel. 那次宴会是在"大饭店"举行的。

H gave a dinner last week. 上星期他举行了一次宴会。
She had given a dinner the previous week. 她是在那前
一个星期举行的一次宴会。(the previous week≠last week)
Lunch/Supper is ready. 午饭/晚饭好了。

He was greedily eating the lunch his mother had given him. 他大口大口地吃着他母亲拿给他的午饭。

The supper was very different from the one of the evening before. 那顿晚餐与前一天晚上的晚餐大不相同。

The ticket entitles you to a free lunch. 凭这张票, 你可以享用一顿免费午餐。

Let me fix you a decent supper. 我给你做一顿象样的晚饭吧!

2.4.2 a/an 加于带定语的复数名词

可数名词复数形式,一般或加定冠词 the (确指),或不加冠词 (不确指,指听者未知)。但在名词复数形式带有表示特殊属性的定语,而说话人要强调该属性时,其前也可以加不定冠词 a/an。这种带 a/an 的复数名词词组表示具听者未知或未明确其特别属性的复数事物。这种用法,对于中国学生是比较新鲜的:

You have to wait for a further five minutes. 你必须再等5分钟。(比较Five minutes passed, then another five minutes. 5分钟过去了,又过了5分钟)。

A mere two hours wouldn't be enough. 仅仅两小时,时间不够。

He's a good five inches shorter than you. 他比你足足矮

5 英寸。

It was a very busy six weeks for the three of them. 对 他们 3 个人来说,那是非常紧张的 6 个星期。

He spent a whole three years investigating into the affair. 他花费了整整 3 年调查这件事。

It would cost us an additional fifty dollars to stay here for the night. 要在这过夜,还得另花50美元。

He has an income of a steady \$3000 a year. 他每年固 定有3000美元的收入。

2.4.3-7 a/an 加于带定语的各种不可数名词

2.4.3 带定语不可數名词"概括指"与"指听者未知"

对于我们, a/an 另一较奇特的用法, 是它可以加于 不可 数名词指"听者未知"的事物,这种用法在英语中是非常普遍 的,特别常用于带定语的不可数名词,如 a watery tea (很淡 薄的茶水),a brutal joy (野蛮的乐趣) (见1.7.2)。

但并非所有带定语的不可数名词都要加不定冠词a/an。 不可数名词即使带有定语,也可仍指一类综合或抽象的事物,不 过所指范围受到某种限定,仍然用其零位冠词"概括指"形式, 如 Do you prefer black tea or green tea, or scented tea? (你爱喝红茶、绿茶、还是花茶呢?) There's more joy in pursuit than in possession. (追求中有着比占有时更大的 乐 趣。) His eyes were shining with sudden and overwhelming joy. 他的目光中闪烁着骤然出现的强烈的、欢乐的光芒。)只 有当定语强调听者未知的属性时,该名词才加a/an:

春藤)

Good wine needs no bush. A wine imported from China (谚语)好酒不用挂幌子。(bush | called "maotai" will be ser-指古时英国酒店作为幌子的长 ved. 宴席上将有一种从中国 进口的叫做"茅台"的好酒

The coat was made of thick, strong cloth. 那件外衣是用又厚又结实的布料做的

He revisited Paris after (a) ten years' absence. 他十年没来了,这次重来巴黎

He is in acute financial difficulty. 他正处在严重的经济困难中

He is making rapid/steady/
remarkable / tremendous / very
poor progress. 他进步很快/
不断进步/进步显著/进步很大
/进步不大

We are further cementing this sound, wholesome relationship based upon mutual respect. 我们正进一步加强建立在互相尊重的基础上的健全、良好的关系

There was absolute silence.
(Huxley) 一片绝对的寂静

There he studied Chinese history. 他在那里学中国历史。比较: At first he studied the history of ancient China, then the history of Rome. 起初他学中国古代史,

I want a cloth that will wear well/that won't wear so soon. 我要一种经穿的/不会很快穿坏的布料

Afetr an absence of twenty minutes, he returned. 他离开20分钟后又回来了

There is a real difficulty. 现在,真的发生困难了

I'm ashamed that I'm not able to make a quicker progress. 我很惭愧,没有能取得更快的进步

They entertained a boundless respect for his wisdom. 他们对他的智慧抱着无限的崇敬

There was a long silence.

一阵长时间的沉寂

It has an honoured history and an illustrious present. (NDEC) 它有着光荣的历史, 更有着光辉的现在

然后学罗马史。

2.4.4 物质名词、集合名词表示"一种……"等

"a/an+带定语的不可数名词"最常用来表示听者未知其属性的"一种……"综合、抽象事物,这一用法广泛用于物质名词、不可数的集合名词及抽象名词(用于带定语不可数抽象名词见以后三节)。

物质名词(皆不可数):

In this way we got from it a sweet watery juice. 我们用这种方法从中获取一种甘甜、清水般的汁液。

It was a fine soap for laundry work. 这是一种很好的洗衣用肥皂。(因不可数,不说 a soap,要说 a cake/bar of soap,但此处指听者未知其属性)

She was heating a very clear/washy/thick/rich soup for him. 她在给他热一种很清/很稀/很浓/很肥的汤。

集合名词(部分集合名词不可数);

Precautionary measures have been taken, including the organization of a campus police to go on night patrol. 已经采取了一些防备措施,包括建立了一支校园保卫队进行夜间巡逻。

The merchant has a faithful and industrious staff. 这位商人拥有一帮忠实、勤恳的营业人员。

Banana is a tropical fruit. 香蕉是一种热带水果。

2.4.5 带定语不可数抽象名词前加 a/an

特别是不可数的抽象名词,最常见带定语,前加不定冠词 a/an,表示具听者未知属性的"一种……"抽象事物,还有时表示具听者未知属性的一次、一定度量的现象、运动等。

可首先比较这类名词的不可数性与其带定语"指听者未知"

时 a/an 的强调性:

There was not a ray of hope before them. (不能说 a hope)。 他们面前没有一丝希望。

It seems a forlorn hope. 看来这点希望非常渺茫。

l'm afraid there remains but a faint/slim hope of success。(忖度)恐怕成功的希望很小了。

He did notable work as an observer in natural history. (NDEC) 作为自然发展史的观察者,他进行了卓越的工作。

He has done a notable work in establishing the laws of motions. (ibid.) 在确定运动法则方面,他完成了一项卓越的工作。

There's no class tomorrow? That's news to me; no one told me.(LDCE)明天不上课吗? 我还不知道呢,没有人告诉我。

Did you hear much news? (简明英汉词典) 你听到的消息多吗?

Here is an interesting piece of news/are some interesting items of news. (ALD) 这是一条有趣的新闻/几条有趣的新闻。

(NDEC) 伦敦方面传来一个非常令人满意的消息。

He is a man of much vigor of mind and body. 他是

个脑力和体力方面精力都非常充沛的人。

There is a graphic vigor in his description of the event. (NDEC) 在他对这一事件的描述里,有一种生动的力量。

2.4.6 带前位定语或带后位定语

这类前面加 a/an 的不可数抽象名词所带定语可 为 前位定语:

We are making steady progress towards a greater unity. 我们正在朝着更大的联合稳步前进。

Every great city shares in a single metropolitan quality. 所有的大城市都具有一种千篇一律的大都市性质。

She had expressed merely an unconcerned curiosity and some amusement. 她仅仅表现出一种不大关切的好 奇 心,表现出她感到有些逗乐。

Those who live, or have lived in the shadow of death bring a mellow sweetness to everything they do. 那些生活在死亡阴影下的人们,或者曾经生活在死亡阴影下的人们,作什么事都会表现出一种柔和的亲切态度。

His paintings have a certain darkness of colour. 他的绘画中有一种阴暗的色调。

A certain calm happiness took up its settled place in his heart. 一种平静的愉快之情,稳定地驻留在他的心中。

a/the devil of a/an...之类的惯用结构中,前面实为定语,修饰后面带 a/an 的名词:

She's had a devil of a time these last two years.(ODCIE) 这两年来,她过得很苦。

I had the devil of a time explaining that.(NDEC) 我费了好大的劲给他们解释这件事。

They were all in a/the devil of a hurry. 他们都急得要命。

She has a lamb of a temper, but he is possessed of a fiery temper, 她性情温顺象只羔羊,而他性情很暴躁。

这种惯用结构也用于修饰可数名词: It will be a devil of a nuisance if the car isn't ready to pick us up. 如果汽车

不能来接我们,那可太伤脑筋了。He has just sent me a jem of a poem. 他刚刚寄给我一首宝石般美好的诗歌。Have you ever heard of his angel of a wife? 你听说过他那天使般的好妻子吗? I know her brute of a husband very well. 我很了解她那畜生般的丈夫。Henry is a girl of a boy, and Helen is a boy of a girl. 亨利是个女孩气的男孩子,海伦是个男孩般的女孩儿。

带 a/an 的不可数抽象名词也可以是由定语从句 修 饰、限 定的,定语从句是一种后位定语:

It seemed to him as if he were destined to a joy of which he was scarcely worthy. 他觉得好象 他 注定要享有一种他不大应该享受的欢乐。

There is about her a simplicity that is almost elegance. 在她身上有一种几乎就是优雅的朴实品质。

We should live each day with a gentleness, a vigor, and a keenness of appreciation which are often lost when time stretches before us in the constant panorama of more days and months and years. 我们每过一天都要怀着一种柔情、一种热望、一种珍惜感,这样的感情常被我们丢掉,只见眼前连绵不断流过新的日月与新的年华。

2.4.7 一时、一次、一定程度的运动或状态等

带定语、前面加用 a/an 的不可数抽象名词,有时表示一时、一次或一定程度的现象、运动、状态等,强调其为听者未知的一次或一定程度:

The first reaction was a new support for greater efforts in the educational field. (一次) 最初的反应是大家重新支持在教育领域作更大的努力。

She has an intense love of music. (一定程度) 她酷爱音

乐。

这两类句子中,不可数抽象名词前也可以没有定语:"a/an+抽象名词"也多指听者未知的一种、一次或一定程度抽象事物(有的可指不确定的抽象事物,见下节)。

Only he afforded us a (whole-hearted) support against pressure. 只有他给我们(全心全意的)支持,来抵抗压力。

She tried to develop a (genuine) love for music. 她努力培养他们对音乐的(真诚)爱好。

2.4.8-10 惯加 a/an 的无定语不可数名词

2.4.8 几种不可数名词无定语也常加 a/an

不可数的物质名词、抽象名词都有不少可不带定语,本身就加用不定冠词 a/an。这些自身加 a/an 的不可数名词多表示听话人尚不知道、说话人令其明确的一种、一个单位、一次或一定度量的综合、抽象事物(包括运动、状态、思想、感情),但也有时用于"不确指",指不确定的单位、一次、一定度量等。

1) 单位物质、定量抽象事物:

He ordered a soup, a tomato soup. (指听者未知)他要了一个汤,一个西红柿汤。

As for me, a salad and a coffee will do. (不确指) 至于我,一个凉拌菜,一杯咖啡就行了。

If you want to please the boy, buy him an ice. (an ice than ice cream) 如果你想让这孩子高兴,就给他买一个冰糕。

I'd like a beer, please. (LDCE) (不确指) 我来杯啤酒吧!
It has a truth. There's a truth in it. (NDEC) 这里面有点道理。

She has a knowledge of short-hand (ibid.) 她懂得一些速

记。

2) 一种或一定程度的病痛:

I have a cold/headache. 我感冒了/头疼。

I have a pain here. I have a good/bad pain here. 我这里疼。我这里很疼。(比较 I have pains all over. 我全身疼。)
He had a toothache. 他牙疼。

I have a boil on my hand. 我手上烫了一下。

She had a bruise on her leg. 她腿上碰破了。

The poor lad had a gastric ulcer. 可怜的小伙子得了胃溃疡。

The baby is running a fever. 孩子在发烧。

但多数疾病名称作为不可数抽象名词,用零位冠词形式,如 cancer (癌肿), cholera (霍乱), diarrhea (腹泻), flu (influenza) (流行性感冒), hepatitis (肝炎), lumbago (腰部风湿), measles (麻疹), mumps (腮腺炎), pneumonia (肺炎), tuberculosis (T. B., consumption) (肺结核)等。仅人人熟知的流行病可带定冠词 the:

Hypertension usually goes hand in hand with arterioscle-rosis. 动脉硬化常并发高血压。

The boy had been ill for two days. His mother thought it was scarlet fever. 孩子病了两天了。他母亲认为那是猩红热。

I had influenza twice during my residence in Berlin. 我住在柏林期间,闹了两次流行性感冒。

She fell ill with flu. 她得了流感。

Roger arrived home with measles. 罗杰回家时就得了麻疹。

Measles broke out. 麻疹病传播开来。

The family were sitting around watching TV, recovering

from the flu. 全家人坐在一起看电视,他们闹流感刚好。

It has the measles. (NDEC)孩子出麻疹了。

3) 一时一次的状态

They got married in a hurry. 他俩匆匆忙忙结了婚。(比较谚语: Marry in haste, repent in leisure. 忙着结婚,闲时悔恨。)

All of a sudden the bird disappeared. 突然那鸟不见了。 (比较: The bird disappeared with (a) startling suddenness.)

The proclamation created a stir/an immense stir/quite a stir in the country. 这一声明在国内引起一番骚动/很大的骚动/相当一番骚动。

There's a bustle going on in the house. 这所房子里人们一阵忙乱。

I don't have a fuss made about such nonsense. (不确指) 为了这点无聊琐事,我无需小题大作。

I broke into a sweat. (NDEC) 我出了一身冷汗。

You are all in a sweat. 你浑身都是汗了。

He was all of a tremble/dither/flutter/twitch/fidget.
(ODCIE) 他心慌意乱,坐立不安。

4) 一时一次的运动(动词原形用作名词):

He burst into a laugh. (NDEC)他放声大笑了一阵。(比较: He burst into laughter/tears. 他放声大笑起来/大哭起来。)

A salute of 21 guns was thundered forth from the fort. 炮台鸣礼炮 21 啊。

He gave me quite a turn. 他吓了我一大跳。

Have a smoke?(不确指) 抽一支烟吗? (Have a cigar/cigarette? 抽一支雪茄/香烟吗?)

She is a comfort to her mother. 对于她的母亲,她是一种慰藉。

I imprinted a kiss on her forehead. 我在她前额上吻了一下。

She led me a (pretty) dance. 她给我造成很大的麻烦。

Give me a lead. (不确指) 给我作个示范。

Pride goes before a fall. (谚语) 骄必败。

It's a waste of time/energy. 那是浪费时间/精力。

Put a stop to this form of adventure. (不确指) 停止这种形式的冒险吧!

We stopped to let our horses have a feed. 我们停下来, 让马匹吃食。

After a run/climb/swim I had a wash/rest/good read. 跑步/爬山/游泳后,我洗了个澡/休息一会/看书看了好长时间。

有些动词的-ing 形式可加 a/an:

Instead of giving him a hearing, the heartless scoundrel gave him a good beating as well as a good scolding. 那坏蛋不但没听他讲讲情况,而且臭骂了他. 还痛打了他一顿。

I got a thrashing for my pains. (NDEC) 我辛辛苦苦出了很大力气却换来一顿打。

I'll hear him give a reading from the best-known of his books. (不确指) 我将听他读读他最熟悉的书。

5) 思想、意识、感情、态度:

He takes/has a pride in his birth. 他为他的出身感到骄傲。

She cherished/felt/manifested/took an interest in poetry. 她对诗歌抱有/感到/表现/发生兴趣。

They bear/have/showed a liking for Chinese food. 他们抱着/有着/表现了对中国饭菜的喜爱。

The couple have a fondness for roses. 夫妻二人都爱玫瑰。

He has a turn for language. 他颇有语言的才能。

I inspired in them a love for our Motherland. 我激发起他们心中对祖国的热爱。

May I ask to do me a favour? 我请您帮我个忙可以吗? Today again they did her an injustice. 今天他们又委屈了她。(比较 This photo doesn't do her justice. 这张照片不象她本人。)

Such cruelty is a reproach/shame to modern society. 这样的残忍行径对于现代社会是一种耻辱。

He's an honour/a dishonour to his class. 他给全班增光/丢脸。

She is a credit/discredit to her parents. 她是她父母的光 荣/耻辱。

War is a disgrace to humanity. 战争使人类蒙受羞耻。

There is a hostility between them. 他们之间有一种敌对关系。

By and by I acquired/conceived a dislike for my partners. 我对我的伙伴逐渐产生/抱有一种厌恶之心。

Fighting was his element. And he fought with a passion, a tenacity and a success such as few could rival. (Engels) 斗争是他得心应手的事情。而他进行斗争的热烈、顽强和卓有成效,是很少见的。

2.4.9 a/an 加于无定语不可数名词属惯用法

上述各种不可数名词,不带定语即可加不定冠词 a/an,实际多属习惯用法。比起它们的零位冠词形式来,加 a/an 的形式有较强的语气。比较:

物质名词

(There is no grass and we have a great deal of dust.

我们这里没有一点草,尘土就非常多。

It raised a cloud of dust. 它扬起大量灰尘。(或:此事引起很大骚动。)

When it rains, dust turns into mud. 天下雨的时候, 尘土就变成烂泥。

What a dust! 好大的灰尘! (What rubbish! 多么无聊! rubbish 原物质名词"垃圾", What fresh fruit! 多么新鲜的水果啊! fruit 不可数集合名词)

状态,抽象名词

Don't make so much fuss over losing a penny. 不要 因为丢了一个便士就这么大惊小怪的。

There's sure to be a fuss when they find the window's broken. 他们发现窗户被打破肯定会大闹一场。

I've never seen so much mess and disorder. ALD 我从来没见过这么一塌糊涂乱七八糟的场面。

The room is a mess. (新英汉词典) 那房间乱成一团。

What a (jolly) mess I am in! (NDEC) 我陷入了多糟糕的困难境地啊!

感情,抽象名词

「For shame! Shame on you! 可耻, 你真可耻!

Have pity on me. 可怜可怜我吧!

What a shame to deceive the girl! 欺骗那位姑娘,多么
 可耻!

What a shame/pity that it rained on the day of your garden party! 你举行花园宴会那天偏偏下雨,多么遗憾啊!

不可数名词,除上节列举各种惯用 其 自 身 (无定语) 加 a/an 外, 一般都要在带有定语, 指该事物具听者未知的 属 性时, 才加 a/an:

What fun! What luck! 多有意思啊! 多幸运啊!
It's fine fun. (NDEC) 真是有意思啊!
He's great/good fun. 他是个非常有趣的人。
It's a fine piece of fun. 真是一件很有意思的事。
Fishing is a fine fun when there is a good take. 钓鱼

钓到好多,那真是一件很有意思的事。

2.4.10 惯用短语中可数、不可数名词所带 a/an

a/an 加于不可数名词,使综合、抽象事物具体化,这种用法也见于大量惯用语。下面列举一些由 a/an 加可数或不可数名词构成的惯用短语,其中很多惯用语中把 a/an 加于不可 数 名词,如 a lead, a fling, an average, a long chalk, a good grace 等。

1) 动词短语

be done to a turn (肉食等) 做得软硬正好 be/go on a diet 吃特定的饮食 come to a head (疮、疖) 出头;事到危急关头 cut/make a figure 露头角 draw a/the line 划定限度 (不许超越) give somebody a brush 把某人打发走,不予理睬 give somebody a lead 给某人示范,提示 have a brush with somebody 与某人争吵 have a habit of (be in the habit of) 有……的习惯 have an attack of 犯了一回……病 have an axe to grind 另有企图 have an eye for/on 很能鉴赏/照看 have a way with 有办法接近某人,有办法作某事 keep an eye on 照看,密切注意 make a clean breast of 和盘托出,全部坦白说清

make a fool of 愚弄
make a mountain out of a molehill 小题大做
play a double game 要两面派
put an end to 结束,制止
stand a good chance 很有可能,大有希望
strain at a gnat and swallow a camel 小事拘谨,大事糊
涂

take a dim view of 对……抱悲观看法 take a fling at 试作 (某事);嘲笑 (某人) turn over a new leaf 重新开始;改过自新

2) 介词短语

at a loss/profit 困惑; 亏本/获利

at a heat/sitting/stretch/stroke 一连气地

by a long chalk 相差很多 (比较 as like as cheese to chalk, 外表相象, 实质不同)

for a change 为了有所变换

for a spell 一段时间

in a flash 一刹那间

in a/the lump 一次全部地/总的说来

in a nutshell 简括地说

in a sense 在某种意义上

in a temper 在生气

in a way 在某种方面;稍微有些

in a word 总之 (一句话)

of a make 同一地方制造的

of a sort 同一类的; 勉强称得上是……的

on an/the average 平均

on a large/small scale 大/小规模的(地)

to a/the day/minute 一天/一分钟不差

to a fault/folly 过分
to a hair (to the turn of a hair) 丝毫不差地
to a man 全体,一齐
with a good grace 欣然地
with a view to 抱着……的目的,鉴于
with a/the view of 抱着……的目的
with a will 起劲地
under a spell 被迷住,着迷

第五章 零位冠词形式使得具体 事物综合化、抽象化

2.5.1-3 可数名词零位冠词形式的意义与用法

2.5.1 零位冠词形式 woman 等的意义

不可数名词用于"概括指"(指综合的、抽象的事物)时,不带冠词,取零位冠词形式,如下列句中的 money 与 culture:

They were a curious couple. Raglan liked being near Ormsby, because he liked to be next to money, and Ormsby liked being near Raglan, because he liked being close to culture. Raglan was not merely cultured, he was Culture, just as Ormsby was not merely rich, he was Money.(A. A. Milne) 这一对伙伴很新奇。拉格兰愿意亲近奥姆斯比,是因为愿意靠近钱财,而奥姆斯比愿意亲近过格兰是因为愿意依附文明。拉格兰不仅非常文明,他就是文明的化身,正如奥姆斯比不仅非常有钱,他就是钱财的化身。

而表示具体事物的可数名词单数形式,如个体名词单数, 一般总是指一类中的"一个"或"某个",总带不定冠词 a/an 或 定冠词 the。例如,I know of a woman of intellect and culture. 我知道一位有才能,有文化的妇女。There goes a story about the woman/her refusing to marry money. 有个传说讲到这位妇女曾拒绝为了致富与有钱的人结婚。

但是,当我们要以个体名词,如 woman 一词,表示综合的或抽象的概念、表示整个范畴时,我们也用其单数不带冠词的零位冠词形式:

She was woman, all woman, just like any woman.(J. London) 正象任何女人一样,她 也 是 女 人 气 质,十足的女人气质。

He knew that for these moments at any rate she was very woman. 他知道在这样的时刻,她必然是满怀女性的温情。

The nincompoop, more woman than man, sitting down there in a sulk—fool!(H. Walpole) 那蠢货,没有点男子汉样子,倒象个小心眼的女人,气呼呼地坐下来——太傻了!

不仅 man, woman 等(指人名词)可用零位冠词形式表示综合、抽象的概念,许多其他个体名词如 ass(指动物名词)、town(指处所名词)、table(指用具名词)等,都可以用零位冠词"概括指"形式来表示整个范畴、类属、一般属性或笼统的状态:

There is so much sickness in town at present. 现在,在城市里,疾病太多了。

I'd be no use in a town...Going into Helston is town enough for me. (D. du Maurier) 我 到 个 大城市去没用处到赫尔斯敦去,对我来说,见的市面就够多的了。

Mrs. Lake had to teach her new maid to wait (on) table properly. 雷克太太必须教给她那新来的女仆,怎样按规矩侍候吃饭。

Then he asked them to sit down to table. 然后他请他们入席。

I was ass enough to tell her the whole story of my life. (Gissing) 我太愚蠢了,竟把我一生的全部经历都告诉她了。

We shall shoot duck next week. 下星期我们打野鸭子。(泛指"野鸭子"这类动物)

His friend took me into the jungle to hunt monkey. 他的朋友带我到丛林里去猎取猴子。(小西友七,英语基本动词辞典)

2.5.2 零位冠词形式 man 等担任主语等成分

可数名词(单数)取零位冠词形式,能担任句中各种名词性成分。这种形式担任表语的相当常见(2.5.4等),担任介词宾语的更是比比皆是(2.5.12等)。担任宾语的比较少些(2.5.10等。而取零位冠词形式,能担任主语的可数名词(单数),比较起来就更少一些。但是,为数不多的这些可数名词以这样的形式担任主语,构成了这类语法现象中重要的一环,值得我们特别注意。现在,就让我们从可数名词零位冠词形式担任主语开始,讨论其所任句中各种成分。

可数抽象名词的零位冠词"概括指"形式担任主语,仅举word, class 二词,其余例句中皆为个体名词的零位冠词"概括指"形式作句子主语:

Man proposes, God disposes. (旧谚语) 谋事在人,成事 在天。

Man is lord over the creation. 人是万物的主宰。

Man will conquer Nature. 人定胜天。

Man with the head, woman with the heart. 男富才智, 女富柔情。

Man for the field, woman for the hearth. 男子致力于垅

亩,女子劳作于家屋。

Of all this and much more, the rosy landlady of the Blue Dragon took an accurate note and observation as only woman can take of woman. (Dickens) 对于这一切,还有其他一些情况,蓝龙饭店这位红光满面的女掌柜都细致入微地注意到、研究过了,这种细致察考是只有女人对于女人才能办得到的。

Modern man does not know what to do with himself, how to spend his lifetime meaningfully. 现代人不知道自己该干什么,不知道怎样度过一生才有意义。

Word came of his success abroad. (LDCE) 消息传来,说他在国外大获成功。

Word came that I was wanted at the office. (ALD) 有人带话来,说办公室那里找我去。

Word soon went around that/Secret word had it that the king was going to be dethroned.(NDEC) 传言很快散布开来说/秘密的传言说国王将被废黜。

I don't know if it's true but word is that Mark's been sacked for embezzling company funds. (ODCIE) 我不知道这是不是真的,传说是马可因为贪污公司款项被解雇了。

Class is at eight. 上课是 8 点。

Class begins. 现在上课。

School has begun/has broken up. (NDEC) 学校开学了(或学校上课了)/学校放假了(或学校放学了)。

Class/Church is over. (class 与 church 原分别为抽象名词与个体名词)下课了/礼拜做完了。

Do you think prison is a cure for crime? 你认为监禁 是消除犯罪的有效方法吗?

He is getting old, and bed is the only place for him.

他老了, 只能总是躺在床上。

2.5.3 成语、谚语中零位冠词形式作主语

在一些形成"约定俗成"固定说法的成语、谚语中,可数名词(特别是个体名词)的零位冠词形式担任了句中主语。在这些语句中,多不好说那是省略了什么冠词,即使个别句中,似乎可说成是略去了冠词,那么去掉冠词的效果也是赋予该可数名词以概括的意义,也就是使之转为零位冠词"概括指"的新的形式。Fool's haste is no speed. (谚语,见《新英汉词典》)欲速

Fool's haste is no speed. (谚语,见《新英汉词典》)欲速则不达。

Fish begins to stink at the head. (句中 fish 为单数, 谚语, (见《新英汉词典》) 鱼要腐烂头先臭。(意指:上梁 不正下梁歪。)

Dog does not eat dog. (谚语, 见 ODCIE) 同类不相残。 Diamond cut diamond. (ibid) 棋逢对手。 (比较: You are a real gem, a diamond of the first water. 你真是一颗宝石, 一颗第一水的钻石。)

That sort of thing, though it undoubtedly descends to the level of "man bites dog" journalism, is perhaps unavoidable nowadays. (成语,见 ODCIE) 这种东西(作品),虽然无疑已降低到专讲"人咬狗"之类新奇事的报章文字的水平,在如今却可能是难以避免的。

2.5.4-9 可数名词零位冠词形式担任表语等

2.5.4 man 等表示事物属性的表语

可数名词零位冠词形式(单数)担任表语的,比担任主语的 要常见得多。担任表语的可数 名 词 零 位冠词形式,以其"概括指"的范畴、类属意义,来表示主语所指人或事物的 属 性,

或者表示其抽象身分、职业、状态等(而不是指特定的个别人或事物)。

本节先讨论表示人或事物属性,用作**表语**的可数名词零位 冠词形式,其常见者例如:

If one met a woman who was all man in mind, all woman in body, and all child in soul—it is impossible …如果一个人竟会 碰 到 这样一个女子,她的意志完全是男子汉那般刚强,身体却完全是女儿家那般娇柔,而灵 魂 又 完 全是小孩子那般纯真一那是不可能的……

He was so much man as to shock her with maiden fears. 他是那样雄强,使她的少女之心颇为震惊。

He was more bull, less man. 他性情上不大象人,倒象是牛。

He's uncle to all the little boys who like to play football with him. (LDCE) 他是所有爱跟他踢足球的小男孩们的叔叔。

She is more mother than wife. 她虽是妻子,却更象母亲。 The child is father of/to the man. (谚语,原 Wordsworth 诗句) 从小看大,三岁看老。

The wish is father of/to the thought.愿望是思想之父。

The boy has a good enough brain but he's bone idle and won't study. (ODCIE) 这孩子脑子相当好,但他是懒骨头,不肯用功。

By Friday, when the show is recorded, we are all expected to be word perfect. (ibid.) (word, 可数抽象名词) 到星期五这出戏录音的时候,要求我们每个演员都是一口尽善尽美的台词。

表示属性的可数名词零位冠词形式可由副词 very, enough, essentially 等加以修饰:

Helen was very woman. She was woman enough to understand why you were troubled. 海伦富于女性的柔情。她那样柔情,足以能理解你的苦恼。

Marie was nineteen and virgin, but she was essentially woman. (Mannin) 玛丽 19 岁,尚属纯贞,但她在本质上是满怀女性的温情的。

He'll be fully master of the subject in the future. 将来他会完全掌握这一学科的。

She became thoroughly master of German. 她精通了德语。

He was not then fully master of his nerves.(NDEC) 当时他未能完全控制住自己的感情。

I am not philosopher enough to determine the cause. (Defoe) 我没有那样聪明的头脑,弄不清这事的原因。

We are not fool enough to believe in such trash. 我们还不至于那么傻,不至于相信这种胡言乱语。

I'm not musician enough to enjoy their rock and roll music. 我没有那么高的音乐修养,欣赏不了他们的摇摆舞音乐。

But he wasn't man enough (manly enough) to confess himself guilty. 但是他没有足够的勇气承认自己有错误。

在让步从句与一种表示相关情况的从句中,为了强调表语,可将其提到从句前面,如该表语为可数名词,也可以作为表属性名词,取零位冠词形式:

Boy as/though he was, he was chosen their leader. 他虽然还是个孩子,就已被选作他们的领头人。

She had suffered much, child though she was. 她虽然还很幼小,却已吃过不少的苦了。

Confirmed smoker that he was, he managed to get rid of

his smoking habit 他虽久已吸烟成癖,却尽力戒除了 吸 烟的恶习。

Masterpiece as/that it is, the novel isn't popular for the time being. 这部小说虽属杰作,目前却不大流行。

Fool as/that I am, I know better than to believe such a cheat. 我虽很傻,却还知道不能相信这样一个骗子。(以上5句带让步从句)

Fool that I was, I took his word for it. (新英汉词典) 我真傻,竟然相信了他的话。(从句表示相关情况,非让步从句)

Michael, fool as/that he was, completely ruined the dinner. (GCE的释义: ...since he was a fool/being a fool ...) 迈克尔, 他真是傻瓜, 他把这次宴会整个糟塌了。

The carrier was in high spirits, good fellow that he was. (that 不可略去,见《综合英汉大辞典》)那搬运工真是个好心人,他干得兴高采烈的。

2.5.5 apprentice 等表示身分状态的表语

可数名词零位冠词形式用来担任表语,表示身分、职业、 人或事物所处关系或状态,用得相当广泛。注意:这种表语是 笼统指示类属,而不是具体地区分个别人或事物:

She was heir to a large fortune. (heir 概括男女继承人) 她是一大笔家产的继承人。(比较: She was the sole heir/the sole heiress/an heiress to the fortune. 她是这笔家产的唯一继承人/唯一的女性继承人/一个继承人。再比较: She died without an heir. 她身后无嗣。)

She is daughter of a doctor. 她是一位医生之女。

Her father, Robert Evant, was son of George Evant, a builder and carpenter in Derbyshire. (Eliot) 她的父亲罗伯特•埃万特是德比郡的营造商兼木匠乔治•埃万特之子。(比

较. He was the (only) son of the doctor. She is a daughter (one of the daughters) of the carpenter.)

My elder brother is apprentice to a printer. 我的哥哥在一个印刷厂学徒。

He is professor of painting to the Royal Academy. (NDEC) 他是英国皇家艺术学院绘画教授。(比较 He is a distinguished Oxford professor. 他是牛津大学一位杰出的教授。)

Mr. Blake has been associate professor of English and will be made full professor this term. (NDEC) 勃雷克先生现为英语副教授,这学期将被提为正教授。

He is dramatist first, critic next. 他首先是戏剧家,其次才是评论家。

That the novelist is poet also is manifest in almost everything he has written. 这位小说家同时还是诗人,这一点从他写的几乎所有作品中都可以看出。

Let the boy go with us lest he prove traitor. (Lytton) (prove, turn 可用作联系动词) 让这孩子跟咱们一起走,以防他本是叛徒。(prove ...本是而未证实,后证实果真是......)

They turned traitor. (句中 traitor, 单数) 他们叛变了。 (比较 They became traitors/He became a traitor. 他们/他成了叛徒。)

Both sisters turned musician. 两姐妹都搞起音乐来。

John turned clever gardener in a few days. 不几天约翰 就学成了好花匠。 (He turned a gardener. 他成为一名花匠。)

The tree turned flagpole in a few days. (小西友七,英语基本动词辞典) 这棵树过了几天就枯死了,只能当旗杆使了。 (比较 The tree turned a flagpole. 那棵树成了一根旗杆。)

The vessel rolled alarmingly. Indeed, she had turned turtle on being launched, an occurrence that caused the German Kaiser to call her "the biggest turtle afloat". (ODCIE) 那艘船惊人地一摆。真的,它刚一下水就象海龟般翻个了,这件事使德国皇帝把它叫做"水上最大的海龟"。

2.5.6 表示独有亲属、职位的表语

在一定范围内,指独有的亲属身分或职位时,表语名词总是用零位冠词形式:

Who is heir to the throne?(ALD) 谁是王位继承人?
One of his daughters is wife to a young solicitor.
(Gissing) 他有一个女儿是个年轻律师的妻子。

You are head of the family. 你是家长。

I was nursery-governess in a family where Mr Copperfield used to visit. (Dickens) 我在科泊菲尔先生常去串门的那户人家担任兼管保育的幼儿家庭教师。

She would always be Queen of England. (Strachey) 她愿意永远作英格兰的女王。

He is president of the Academy of Sciences. 他是科学院院长。

I was chairman of the meeting. 我是会议主席。

He became Dean of Studies in that university. 他成为那所大学的教务长。

He was then First Secretary of our Party. 他当时是我们党的第一书记。

I became managing director. (Jespersen) 我成为总经理。

但当表语所指不是抽象的身分、职位,而是特定的某一个 人时,表语名词还要带有冠词:

He is a first/second/third secretary of the embassy. 他是

大使馆的一位一等/二等/三等秘书。

Is this comrade the secretary of your Party committee? 这位同志是你们的党委书记吗?

I presume that you are the director of this Institute. 我想您是这个研究所的所长吧?

2.5.7 表示身分、职位等的补语

主语补语、宾语补语都有表语的性质,指明主语或宾语的 类属、身分、职位等,因此,两种补语也象"概括指"表语一样, 可由可数名词零位冠词形式担任。

零位冠词形式的补语所指,也不一定是某一范围内独有的身分和职位:

He'll be made full professor this term. (主语补语) 这学期他将被提为正教授。

They'll make him full professor this term. (宾语补语) 这 学期他们将把他提为正教授。

I was bound apprentice to a shoemaker. 我在一个鞋匠那里(按照约定条款)当学徒。

We made/took them prisoner. They were made/taken prisoner. (NDEC) (prisoner 单数)我们俘获了他们。他们被我们俘获。

零位冠词形式的补语所指,也可为某一范围内独有的身分和职位:

He was elected chairman of the Society. They elected him chairman. 他被选为协会主席。他们选他为主席。

She was appointed secretary of the new Party committee. 她被任命为新的党委会的书记。

He left his nephew heir to his estate. 他死去时让他的侄子做他的产业继承人。

但当主语补语或宾语补语所指不是抽象的身分职位等,而是指特定的某一个人时,该补语名词还要带不定冠词或定冠词:

Flu kept me a prisoner in my room. 流行性感冒迫使我 呆在我的房间里。

He was elected (the) chairman of the education committee. (LDCE) 他被选为教育委员会的主席。

比较:The commission elects a chairman from its members. (NDEC) 委员会从委员中选出一位主席。

作为名字、绰号,可数名词也取零位冠词形式:

Frailty, thy name is woman. (Shakespeare) 软弱性啊, 你的名字就是"女人"。

I was dubbed "poet". 他们给我的绰号是"诗人"。

2.5.8 表示身分、职位等的同位语

同位语也有类似表语的性质,进一步明确关系、身分、职位等,因而同位语也可以象"概括指"的表语那样,由可数名词零位冠词形式担任。

零位冠词形式的同位语,同样不一定指某一范围内独有的身分和职位:

Brian, son of Harold, has taken over the enterprise. 伯利安,哈罗德之子,已接管该企业。

Brown married Mary Godwin, daughter of the late professor Godwin. 布朗娶了玛丽·果德文,已故的果德文教授之女。

Here is a pronoucing dictionary by D. Jones, professor of phonetics. 这有一本语音学教授琼斯编的发音词典。

A man may have many aspects: husband, father, friend, businessman. Depending on circumstances and on his surroundings, he behaves like a husband, (a) father, (a) friend, or (a) businessman. (I. Asimov) (第一句中 husband,

father 为"独有身分",friend, businessman 非"独有身分",)一个人可以有许多方面:丈夫、父亲、朋友、商人。根据不同情况与不同环境,他表现为一个丈夫、一个父亲、一个朋友或者一个商人。(英语并列名词前可只由第一个带冠词,其后名词略去冠词,见 3.2.1)

零位冠词形式的同位语同样也可以指某一范围内独有的身分、职位:

We saw a piece of sculpture by Mrs. Scott, wife of the late explorer. 我们看到已故探险家斯考特之妻斯考特夫人的一件雕塑。

Mr. Marvin, president of the club, will be in the chair. 俱乐部主席马尔文先生将主持这次会议。

Carl Johnson, Superintendent of the Schools, received me in his office. 学校监督卡尔·约翰逊先生在他的办公室接见了我。

但当同位语所指不是抽象身分、职位、而是特定的某一个 人时,同位语名词还要带不定冠词或定冠词:

Ann, the daughter of the landlady, cooked breakfast for the boarders. 女房东的女儿安给房客们做早饭。

I'm sure you know Alfred Hard, a professor at London University. 我肯定你认识阿尔弗来·哈德,伦敦大学的一位教授。

Mrs. Mowit, the wife of the artist, and Mr. Jackson, her brother, and also two of his daughters were a few others with whom I rubbed shoulders in the crowd at the exhibition. 在这个展览会的人群中,与我们摩肩接踵、碰到一起的还有些别人,有这位艺术家的妻子莫维特太太,她的弟弟杰克逊先生,以及他的两个女儿。

2.5.9 表示身分、职位等的 as 短语

在 as ("为……"、"作为……") 用作介词所引导的介词短语中,也常用可数名词零位冠词形式表示类属、身分、职位等,该 as 后面的名词有时相当于补语,有时相当于同位语,有时仅与 as 构成介词短语用作状语:

The president named him as/to be Secretary of State. (LDCE) (宾语补语) 总统指定他为国务卿。

In the library catalogue, Guilliver's travels is classified as fiction. (主语补语) 在图书馆的书目中,格里弗的旅行记(记大人国、小人国等)被归为小说。

He wants a position as teacher of English. (同位语) 他想找个英语教师的职位。

He went on board ship as cabin boy. (状语) 他作为船舱服务员到船上来工作。

Robecca was now engaged as (a) governess. 罗贝佳这时正受聘当家庭教师。

He is acting as headmaster until a new one is appointed. 他正在代理校长,等新校长被任命。

Mr Stapleton had persuaded a leather merchant to take my father on as traveller. 斯塔普列通先生已说服一个皮革商雇用我父亲为旅行推销员。

但当 as 后面的名词所指不是抽象类属、身分、职位等,而 是特定的某一个人、个别事物时,还要带有冠词:

I can't see him doing much good as a traveller. 我看不出他作为一名旅行推销员有多大成绩。

As a schoolboy he showed every sign of genius. 作为一个小学生他就表现出种种天才的迹象。

This room will serve as the office. 这个房间将作为所需的办公室。

2.5.10-11 可数名词零位冠词形式担任宾语

2.5.10 man 等担任宾语

取零位冠词形式担任宾语的可数名词,首先就是常取零位冠词形式担任主语的那些,如,man, woman; church, school, prison, bed 等指人、处所、用具的名词(另加 college, town, table 等)及抽象名词 class, word 等:

We all support these great doctrines which raise man to higher levels. 我们都赞成这些把人类提到较高水平的伟大信念。

Women singers usually look older than they really are. There is something about them that says woman, not girl. 女歌唱演员一般看着比实际年龄要大些。她们身上某种迹象显示她们是成年女子,而不是女孩子了。

They didn't go hunting bear. 他们没有去猎熊。

You've had too much town. (G. Greene) 你已经见识过大城市,见识的太多了。

He leaves town early 他很早就出城。

We have school till four in the afternoon. 我们上课上到下午4点。

Thousands of farm boys and girls are attending college to fit themselves for better and fuller lives as farmers and farm women. 成千上万农场孩子在上大学,以便将来有能力过更美好、更丰富的农民生活。

She attends church regularly. 她经常去做礼拜。

He found prison at last. (NDEC) 他终于进了监狱。

They get bed and board at his house. 他们就在他这所房子食宿。

The girls earn spending money by waiting (on/at) table in the school dining room. 女生们在学校饭厅伺候开饭,挣零花钱。

But I have to attend class this afternoon. 但是我今天下午得上课。

He only got word this morning. 今天上午他才接到通知。

Please leave word with my child if I'm not at home. 我不在家时,请留个话,说给我的孩子。

2.5.11 惯用动词短语中的零位冠词形式

同时,在大量惯用的动词短语中,还有更多的可数名词以 零位冠词形式作为动词宾语。下面举些常用带零位冠词形式宾 语的动词短语(包括可数名词与若干不可数名词作宾语者)。

bear fruit 结果,有了成果
bear false witness 作伪证
gain ground 进展;普及
bring word 带话(来)
send word 带话(去)
cast anchor 抛锚
catch sight of 看到,发现
lose sight of 不再看见,

give battle 挑战
give birth to 生 (孩子)
give ear to 倾听
give rise to 引起
have pity on 怜悯
keep house 照管家务

bear witness 作证
break ground 破土动工
lose ground 衰落; 败退
leave word 留话
write word 书面通知
cast seed 撒种
keep sight of 盯住
declare war against 对……

宣战

(give the battle 认输)
give credit to 为……增光
give heed to 注意
give way to 让路给,屈
服于

take pity on 怜悯

keep watch 守望,守护 lose heart 灰心丧气 make haste 赶紧 make headway 进展 make shift 设法,对付 make fun/sport of 拿…… 取笑 make room for 给……让

地方

make war upon与……打仗 make interest with 对(某 人)施加影响

make love to 向……表示 爱情

set sail 启航 set foot on 踏上 take aim 瞄准 take ship 乘船 take delight in 以……为 乐事

advantage of 利用 take (事物),捉弄(人)

take heed of 注意,提防 take notice of 注意、细看 talk shop 谈本行工作,讲 行话

keep guard 守卫,警戒, 站岗

keep time with 随着(音 乐) 节拍

take heart 振作精神 make holiday 度假 make sense 有意义,讲得 通

make time 腾出时间,准 时来到

make use of 利用 make way for 给……让路 make peace with 与.....讲 和

make suit to 向……求婚, 恳求

set fire to 放火烧 take breath 歇口气 take wing 起飞,逃走 take pride in 为……感到 骄傲

take charge of 管理 take leave of one's senses 发疯

take possession of 占有 tend shop 接待顾客

2.5.12-13 可数名词零位冠词形式作介词宾语 2.5.12 man, apprentice 等担任介词宾语

取零位冠词形式担任介词宾语的可数名词(单数),首先应提到两大类。第一类即常取零位冠词形式担任主语或宾语的若干最常用的指人、处所、用具等的名词,如 man, woman; church, school; bed, table; class, word等。第二类,即常取零位冠词形式担任表语、补语的表示身分、职位等的名词,如表一般身分的 apprentice等及表一定范围内独有身分的 president等。

1) 指人、处所、用具等名词作介词宾语 Man is to man a wolf. 人对人如虎狼。

She is more interested in man than in men. 她对一个个男人不大感兴趣,倒是对研究整个男性更感兴趣。

All the centuries of woman since sex began were eloquent in her eyes. (J. London) 自从有了男女之别以来,女性所经历的全部漫长历史在她看来是意味深长的。

She was found with child. 人们发现她怀孕了。

She put questions to me regarding baby. 她问我关于婴儿的问题。

Indians hunted the prairie for buffalo. 印第安人在草原上捉野牛。

He has gone down town to do some shopping. 他到市中心去买些东西。

She was just old enough for school, and he was already through college. 她刚到上小学的年龄,而他已大学毕业。

The bells are ringing for church. 钟响了,要做礼拜了。

I stayed away from church as I was ill. 我有病没去做礼拜。

He was sent to prison for theft. 他因盗窃入狱。

The cook went to (the) market to buy food for the family. (ALD) 厨师到市场上给全家买食品。

I found him ill in bed. 我发现他卧病在床。

Evie was never very much for bed. (Schibsbye) 艾维从来不大贪睡。

I asked her to tell me who all the people at table were. 我让她告诉我、吃饭的那些人都是谁。

You're again late for class. 你上课又迟到了。

Foreign language cannot be learned in class alone. 只是在课堂上学,是学不会外语的。

Report must be made either by word of mouth or in writing. 必须作口头或书面报告。

2) 指身分、职位等名词作介词宾语:

He's now working as apprentice for a dentist, 他现在在跟一个牙科图生当学徒。

The university conferred the dignity of Doctor on the celebrated scientist. 这所大学把博士的光荣学位授予了这位著名科学家。

He accepted the post of English teacher at a middle school. 他承担了一个中学的英语教师的 职 务。

For eighteen years he had filled the post of librarian here. 15 年来他一直在这里任图书馆员之职。

She held a position as governess. 她担任着家庭教师工作。

The philological Society has Mr White for president. 语言学学会的主席是怀特先生。

He accepted the position under President Mckinley as Secretary of War. 他接受了在奠金里总统领导下的国防部长的职位。(奠金里,美1897~1901年第25任总统)

He holds the post of consul general for the United States at Shanghai. 他担任着美国驻上海总领事之职。

The post of headmaster was given to his brother. 校长的职位交给了他的弟弟。

2.5.13 惯用介词短语中的零位冠词形式

同时,在大量的惯用介词短语中,还有更多的可数名词以零位冠词形式作为介词宾语。下面举些常用带零位冠词形式介词宾语的介词短语(包括可数名词与若干不可数名词作介词宾语者)。

at anchor 停泊

at hand 在手边,在附近,即将到来

at play 在玩耍

at war 在打仗

by birth 在血统上,天生地

by chance 偶然

by ear 凭听而记住的 (演奏、唱)

by heart 记住,背会

by letter 书面:写信

by rail 乘火车,用火车运

by sight 见面(认识)

by train 乘火车,用火车

by way of 路过,经由 店 (by the way 顺便说起来) for example/instance 例如 in bed 已睡下,未起床 良 in hand 在手头;控制中;

at bottom 本质上,实际上

at heart 内心里;本质上

at sea 在海上, 茫然不知

所措

at work 在工作

by boat 乘船

by hand 用手工

by land 从陆地上

by name 指名,名叫,凭 名字

by sea 走海路

by trade 在职业上

by water 乘船,用船运

for dear life 拼命(逃命)

for sale (准备) 出售

on sale (摆在市场上,商

店中) 出售

in case 假如,以防

in part 部分地,某种程度上

in season 应时的: 及时的

进行中

in name 在名义上 in place of 代替 in sight 看得见 (by turns 轮流,一个替换 | 齐全 一个)

on foot 徒步 on horseback 骑马 on purpose 故意地: 为了

on tiptoe 贴着脚 to advantage 使优点突出 | ……外,紧接着,能驾驭 to hand 在手头; (信) 已收到

在……信中

under sail 张着帆,在航 行

在城里: (英国) in town 在伦敦

在船(车、飞机) on board 上

in turn 依次,一个接一个 on deck 在甲板上,准备

on hand 在手头;(美国英 语) 在场,即将到来

on occassion 间或,有时 on/off shore 上了岸/离 了岸

on top of 在 ······ 上,除 to excess 过度,过分 to time 准时 under cover 隐藏着;附 under fire 在炮火中,受 攻击

> under way 在进行中,在 航行

within call/sight 在听得见招呼/看得见的地方 out of cry/sight 在听不见呼喊/看不见的地方

第六章 无冠词或加 the 的复数形式 使独特事物一般化、分别化

2.6.1 专有名词复数形式(不带冠词)

在第二编第一章中我们曾讨论 a/an 使 专有名词所表示的 特殊事物一般化,如He is a Napoleon.

以前我们还谈到过, a/an 加于单数名词 表 示 "不确 指"或 "指听者未知",正相当不带冠词的复数名词表示 "不确 指"或 "听者未知"(1.3.8; 1.3.9; 1.5.5)。在 使专有名词一般化 这 方 面,不带冠词的复数形式也相当于 a/an 加于该名词单数形式,不过复数形式除有一般化作用外,还有分别化的 作用,其所指为一类事物(包括人)当中 互 有 分 别的若干事物。比较:

A (certain) Brown told me that. 一个姓布朗的人告诉我的。

I know of quite a number of Browns in our factory. 我知道我们工厂有很多姓布朗的人。

不带冠词的专有名词复数形式同样有"不确指"与"指听者未知"两种意义,两种意义都使原指独特事物的专有名词一般化、分别化:

Are there other Roberts from the same village? (不确指) 从那个村子来的还有别的名叫罗伯特的人吗?

Yes, there're a lot of them, a lot of other Roberts. (指 听者未知) 有啊, 有不少, 有不少也是名叫罗伯特的人。

在比喻语言、文学作品中常用无冠词的专有名词复数指一 类人或事物,把原来独特的人或事物变成了一般性的,互有分 别的一些人或一些事物:

All the great nations have Shakespeares of their own. 所有各大民族都有各自的、莎士比亚式的伟大剧作家。

Blaize and her commission, that's nothing. The first of many similar incidents from other Blaizes. (D. du Maurier) 勃莱兹和她执行的任务,那算不了什么。那只是许多其他勃莱兹式人物所致同类事件的一个开端罢了

In the old China there were millions of Xi-ers who lived in bitter misery under the oppression of cruel land-

lords. 在旧中国,有千百万喜儿那样的妇女,在 残 酷地主的压迫下,过着悲惨的生活。

Daqing is the first of its kind. We are having a number of new Daqings under construction. 大庆是同类油田中的第一个。我们正在兴建许多新的大庆。

2.6.2 指独有事物名词的复数形式

指自然界独有事物的 sun, moon, world 等, 也可以取无 冠词的复数形式, 指一类事物中不确定的或听者未知的事物:

There are many suns brighter than our sun. 许多恒星的光比我们的太阳更强。(比较 With a weaker sun, the planet have to be closer to it. 如为一弱于我们的太阳的恒星,该行星就要离它近些。There isn't much sun today. 今天阳光不强。)

You'd think Francis was a sentimental undergraduate. He's seen moons before, my dear, and heard nightingales. 你会以为弗兰西斯是个多愁善感的大学生吧! 亲爱的,月亮,他见过的多了,夜莺也听过不少了。

There are worlds of worlds in London. 在伦敦有着千奇百怪、形形色色的世面。

Not for worlds, sir, not for worlds! 说什么也不行, 先生, 说什么也不行! (比较: He is in a world all by himself and never cares about what is happening around him. 他生活在只有自己一个人的小天地中, 从来不关心周围发生的事情。)

The two things are worlds apart. 这两者有天壤之别。(比较: It makes a world of difference whether precautions are made or not. 采取预防措施与否,是有极大关系的。)

2.6.3 带 the 专有名词、指独有事物名词复数

"the+专有名词、独有事物名词复数"也是在把独特事物一般化、分别化,不过,同时又在确指该一般化、分别化事物中的某些个别事物:

This is one of the six Londons. London being divided under the six Poets—Virgilius, Horatius, Catullus, Ovidius, Tibullus, Sappho. (H. Walpole) 这是那六个伦敦之一。伦敦按古希腊、罗马诗人的名字分成了六部分一维吉利亚斯、霍拉舍斯、加达拉斯、奥维第亚斯、提巴拉斯与萨弗。

For a few days at the end of February there came a mockery of sunshine, sad like the suns of autumn. 在二月末有几天,露出那么一点太阳光,惨淡得有如秋天的阳光一样。

He was throwing some pictures of the moons of Jupiter on to a screen. 他正在把木星卫星的照片放映到屏幕上面。

We admit both the worlds of sense and of spirit. 我们既承认有感官所感受的物质世界,也承认思想所创造的精神世界。

在下列句中, the skies, the heavens 为修辞用语,文学用语:

He was praised up to the skies. 他被捧上了天。

Closely they watched the British Literary skies in hopes of some new stars of genius swimming into their ken. 他们密切注视着英国文学界的天空,热烈希望有些天才的新星会溜进他们的视野。

Suddenly heavy clouds appeared in the heavens. 空中突然阴云密布。

2.6.4 带 the 姓名等的复数形式

"the+姓名复数形式"是把以该姓名称呼的人一般化、分别化、指其中的某些人,因而,多用来指某某全家,某一家族,有时也指特定的父子、叔侄、夫妻、兄弟姐妹、年长或年轻一代等。

"Do you mean the Jacksons with whom we made a trip to the Crimea some years ago?"—"Oh, no. It's quite another family. Do you remember the Jackson who used to play tennis with us? He's the eldest son of the family I mean." "你是说几年前我们同他们一起去克里米亚的杰克逊一家子吗?"—"不是。那是另一家。你记得常和我们打网球的杰克逊吗?他是我所说这一家的大儿子。"

When a Forsyte was engaged, married or born, all the Forsytes were present. (Galsworthy) 当福赛特家族的一个成员订婚、结婚或出生时,所有的福赛特都出席庆贺。

By the usurpation of Cromwell the Stuarts were excluded from the throne in 1645. 由于克伦威尔掌权, 1645年斯图亚特家族被赶出王室(斯图亚特王朝中断)。

Though always on affectionate terms when they met, the two Dumas [dju'ma:] (the elder Dumas [dju'ma:] and his son) were too different in their ideas to see much of one another. 二仲马 (大仲马与其子小仲马) 相见时虽总是 很 亲热, 但他俩的思想大不相同, 因而彼此很少见面。

By the Napoleons we mean Napoleon I, his son Napoleon II and his nephew Napoleon III. 我们说三个拿破仑是指拿破仑一世,他的儿子拿破仑二世与他的侄子拿破仑三世。

At this time her husband Pierre Curie joined with her in her reseach... In spite of all the discomforts, the Curies worked on. 这时,她的丈夫皮埃尔·居里参加进来,同她一起进行研究……尽管非常艰苦,居里夫妇还是坚持工作。

They weren't the only young couple to have made such a decision... Perhaps the decision made by the Taylors is a sign that people will return to the cities and begin to restore them. 做出这样决定的并不是只有他们这一对年轻夫妇……可能泰勒夫妻所做的决定是一个预兆,预示人们将返回城市,并着手把城市恢复建设起来。

The first flying machine of the Wrights' looked too fragile to fly. 来特兄弟所制造的第一架飞机看样子太不结实了,好象不能飞行。

She was entertaining the little Wangs at the door. 她在门口逗王家的小孩们玩。

指人的专有名词复数并非都是姓名,党、团、派别及更常见的指民族名词皆属指人专有名词,常用复数:

After a long struggle in the Convention, the Girondists were overthrown (2 June 1793) by their rivals, the Jacobins, and many of them were beheaded. 经过国民议会中的长期斗争,吉伦特派为其对方雅各宾派推翻(1793年6月2日),许多吉伦特派人员被斩首。(吉伦特派为法国1789年资产阶级革命时期的所谓"温和派",Girondist一词来自法西南部地名。Gironde,该派原由那里的代表领导。雅各宾派为当时所谓的"激进派",而 Jacobin 一词源出巴黎寺院名 The Church of St. Jacques。圣雅各院、该派常在该院集会)

The Tories are now officially called the Conservatives. 托利党人现在的正式名称是保守党人。(Tory,原爱尔兰语,意为"追逐者","强人",本指反对英格兰殖民者的爱尔兰人,后指一爱尔兰保王派,最后在整个英国指固守传统的保守党人,19世纪30年代,当时在野的托利党人正式建立了保守党,至今仍为英主要政党之一)

有些古民族名,后兼为姓名,如:

the Franks 法兰克人 Frank (男名) Franks (姓) the Normans 诺曼人 Norman (男名)

第七章 无冠词或加 the 的复数形式 使综合、抽象事物具体化、分 别化

2.7.1 指 "不确定"或 "指听者未知"的 "多种"、"大量"

在第二编第四章中我们曾讨论 a/an 使 得综合、抽象事物 具体化,如 This is a different tea from the tea we usually buy. (这种茶和我们平常买的茶不同。) Your magazine is a weekly joy to me. (你们的杂志每星期都给我带来一番乐趣。)

以前我们谈过,不带冠词的名词复数形式,如同 a/an 加单数形式那样,表示一类中不确定的或听者未知的事物(1.3.9;1.5.5);上一章又讲了无冠词复数形式使专有名词一般化、分别化的用法。现在可进一步观察一下无冠词复数形式用于某些不可数名词,使它们所表示的综合、抽象事物具体化、分别化的用法,观察一下它们"不确指"与"指听者未知"的情况:

He found her drinking Chinese tea, which she did not like,—but what could one do, other teas were "common". (Galsworthy) (不确指) 他发现她在喝中国茶,那茶她并不爱喝一可是没办法啊,因为别的茶都太"一般"了。

They are now serving bad teas in the teahouse. (指听者未知) 现在茶馆里卖的茶太次了。

What I can perceive is the endless variety of earthly ioys. (不确指) 我所看到的是无穷无尽、形形色色的人世之欢

乐。

They shared with us joys and sorrows, cares and resposibilities. (指听者未知) 他们与我们同欢乐、共患难,分担了我们的忧愁与责任。

不可数名词以复数形式 出 现,具有"多种"、"多次"、"大量"等含意。常取复数形式的不可数名词主要是物质名词与部分不可数抽象名词。集合名词也有一部分是不可数名词,当其采取复数形式时,也带有"多种"、"大量"等意义。比较:

We have much fruit this year. (本不可数) 今年水果很多。

Many fruits ripen now: apples, pears, plums... (多种) 好多水果都成熟了,有苹果、梨、李子……

Fruits of the workers' toil are buried in the strong coffers of a few. (the Internationale) (多种且大量)劳动者血汗培育出的累累果实,葬送在寥寥几人的铁柜中。

2.7.2 无冠词物质名词复数

不带冠词的物质名词复数形式最常用来表示 不 确 定 的或"听者未知"的多种物质,有时表示一份份多数单位量的物质,也常常表示大量的物质。

1) 多种物质:

Tea will pick up damp to a surprising degree, that is why packet teas are hermetically sealed. (不确指) 茶叶很容易受潮, 其爱受潮程度使人惊讶, 因此各种零包茶 叶都 要密封。

He's an expert in tasting wines. (不确指) 他是一位品尝各种酒类的专家。

I'm afraid that other wines do not agree with me. (不确指) 我恐怕喝别的酒都不适应。

Adulterated wines were served out. (指听者未知) 端上来的几种酒都是掺了水的。

Brass is good and brittle ... Steels are unpredictable: some tough, and others soft. (不确指) 铜比较好却不结实各种钢很难说: 有的钢很硬, 有的很软。

We produce high quality steels. (指听者未知) 我们生产多种高质量钢材。

2) 多数单位量,

We want two teas and a whisky. 我们要两杯茶,一杯威士忌酒。

Send them three coffees and three lemonades. 给他们送三杯咖啡和三瓶柠檬水。

3) 大量物质:

Still waters run deep. (不确指)(谚语) 水静流深。口不言,心意深。

The thunders bellowed over the wild waste of waters. (指 听者未知) 滚滚雷声在那荒凉的、无边的水面上轰鸣。

The road was still covered with lingering snows. 路上仍铺着久未消融的积雪。

物质名词复数有时用来指一类特殊物质:

The Caucasus is rich in mineral waters. 高加索盛产矿泉水。

2.7.3 the + 物质名词复数

"the+物质名词复数形式",也是在把综合事物具体化、分别化,不过,同时又在确指该具体化、分别化事物中的某些个别事物,指"某些种"、某些份单位量或某种大量的物质:

1) 某些种、各种:

The teas of this plantation are all of a very good qual-

ity. 这个农场所产各种茶叶质量都非常好。

The wines of the Crimea are excellent. 克里米亚半岛的各种葡萄酒都很好喝。

He knows very well the distinction between the ashes of the various tobaccos. 各种烟草的烟灰的不同,他都能清楚地辨认出来。

2) 某些单位量:

Sixty cents for the two soups. 两个汤 6 角钱。

Have the three coffees been served out? 那三杯咖啡端上去了吗?

3) 某种大量物质:

Before them spread the blue waters of the lake. 他们面前展现出那辽阔的、碧蓝的湖水。

The snows have gone quickly this year. 今年积雪融化得很快。

They travelled across the burning sands of the Sahara Desert. 他们穿过了撒哈拉沙漠炎热的沙地。

带 the 的物质名词复数也有时用来指某类特殊物质:

He was taking the waters at Hamburg. 他正在汉堡进行温泉治疗。

2.7.4 无冠词不可数抽象名词复数

不带冠词的不可数抽象名词复数形式,最常用来表示不确定的或"听者未知"的多种抽象事物,有时表示反复多次的运动或状态,也常常表示大量的抽象事物。

1) 多种抽象事物:

It is not pleasure in itself but the choice of pleasures that matters. (不确指) Nature pleads in us for certain pleasures. (指听者未知) (Sarah Grand) 问题不在于享乐本身,

而在于追求什么样的乐趣。某些乐趣是我们的天性所寻求的。

Life is full of troubles. (不确指) 生活中充满了种种烦恼。

This aroused troubles in the country. (指听者未知) 这事在国内引起了动乱。

When sorrows come, they come not single spies, but in battalions. (Shakespeare) (不确指) 苦难不是象密探那样单个前来,它们总是成帮成群降临头上。(祸不单行)

He has had many sorrows. (指听者未知) 他经历了许多 苦难。

We must exert ourselves to learn new truths. 我们必须努力学习新的真理。

I have heard it argued that thoughts are things, and also that thought is creative. 我听人们议论,说思想意识是客观事物,又说思想活动富有创造力。

2) 多次运动或状态:

She's always making troubles. 她总是捣乱。

Never mind her extravagances, her follies, or her sins. 不要计较她的放纵、她的蠢事或她的罪过吧!

She looked into vacancy ... the facts of love. The facts of this one love in all the infinity of loves that life had known. (D. Carter) 她出神地望着半空……爱情的往事。生活中发生过的无数次爱情中这一次爱情的往事。

The silence had lasted for several minutes, and was beginning to possess something of that peculiar eloquence which such silences usually have. 这一沉默已持续了几分钟,正要取得这样的沉默所常具有的那种特别雄辩有力的效果。

3) 大量抽象事物:

She had immense admirations, immense scorns. 对好人好

事她极其钦佩,对坏人坏事她极其蔑视。

Hopes of returning prosperity run high. 恢复原有繁荣的希望大大增长。

Such trifles occassionally ruffle tempers. 这类琐事有时很让人生气。

A thousand thanks. 多谢多谢!

A thousand pities that he could not wait, say half an hour. 太遗憾了,他没等一等,比如说等半个小时,也许就等到了。

2.7.5 the + 不可数抽象名词复数

"the+不可数抽象名词复数形式",也是在把综合、抽象事物具体化、分别化,不过,同时又在确指该具体化,分别化事物中的某些个别事物,指"某些种"抽象事物、某些次运动或状态、或某种大量的抽象事物。

1) 某些种、各种:

He persued ardently all the major and minor pleasures of life. 他热烈追求生活中所有大大小小的乐趣。

Silent and calm, he bore all the troubles of his life. 他默默地、平静地承受着他的生活中的所有痛苦。

She'll have yet to suffer the sorrows of future years. 她还要遭受将来多年的苦难。

No sophistry will ever be able to eclipse the truths of science. 任何诡辩也不能遮掩科学真理的光辉。

Faith is the finest of human qualities, but the faiths of the West differ widely from those of the East. 信仰是人类最好的品质,但西方的种种信念与东方的大不相同。

2) 某些次运动或状态:

She attempted to end all the troubles of her domestic

life by suicide. 她企图自杀,以了却家庭生活中的一切烦恼。

But he took no credit to himself for his kindnesses to them: never thought of the kindnesses a second time, in fact, except to repeat them. 但他从不为自己对他们的照顾而居功自傲——给过的照顾,再不想起,确实,只管一次再一次地给予同样的照顾。

3) 某种大量抽象事物:

The plan, however, was realized beyond the wildest hopes. 但是,超出原来最大胆的设想,这一计划居然实现了。

He was aware of the necessity to raise the troop tempers to a boil. 他知道有必要鼓动起激昂的士气。

Neither the colds of winter nor the heats of summer seemed to have any influence on his bodily health. 冬天的严寒与夏天的酷热,看来对他健壮的体格都毫无影响。

The winds blew against him, and the passionate cry of saddened Nature rang in his deafened ears. 狂风迎着他吹来, 阴惨的大自然激烈的号叫声在他耳中喧响, 震耳欲聋。

2.7.6 复数形式可与单数形式在意义上有所不同

但是,要注意若干不可数抽象名词,在采取复数形式时,词义有所改变,甚至转而表示某种大不相同的意义。

White was found guilty of causing damage to Black's property and was ordered to pay damages. 怀特被人发现给勃来克的财物造成了损失,被勒令交付赔款。

The worried look has passed from his eyes. 他目光中的苦恼神情消失了。

They wept a little just for the looks of the thing/for appearance's sake. (NDEC) 他们哭了一会儿装装样

子。

Nature has favoured them with the good looks. 大自然恩赐给她们美好的容貌。

UI don't like his looks. 我不喜欢他的神态。

He is affable in manner. 他的态度和蔼可亲。

He is great in a manner. 在某种意义上,他可以说是个伟大人物。

He has no manners. 他毫无礼貌。

Most motorists had no "road manners" then. 当时大多数驾驶汽车的人都不讲"行车礼让"。

(He is in pain. 他很痛苦。

He is at great pains to collect historical materials. 他下了很大的苦功来搜集历史资料。

This is due to carelessness on your part. 这是由于你 这方面的粗心大意。

| You are a man/woman of parts. 你是个颇有才华的人。

We can make a considerable saving by selling the car. 卖掉这辆小汽车,我们可以省下很多花费。

Then we can use our savings to buy some new furniture. 然后我们可以用存款买些新家具。

A proverb is the wisdom of men and the wit of one. 谚语是众人的智慧,体现在某个人机智的措辞中。

He is a man of slow wits. 他是个头脑反应很慢的人。

The ladies were frightened out of their wits. 那些女士们被吓得不知所措。

另有若干不可数或可数抽象名词,其复数形式可转而指一些具体事物(包括一些人),成为复数个体名词:

colour 颜色, 但 He served with the colours/joined the

colours. (the colours "军旗"、"旗帜")他参加了军队。

delicacy 精致,但 I was entertained with all kinds of homely delicacies. 人家用各种家做的美味款待我。

security 安全; 但 There were also some people who traded in government securities. (securities "证券") 还有人在买卖公债券。

spectacle 景象;但 There was a gentleman in/wearing spectacles. 有一位戴眼镜的先生。

wit 才智, 但 All the wits and beauties of the town were present at the party. 全城所有的才子佳人都出席了这一宴会。 youth 青春, 但 The youths were marching with red banners. 小伙子们正举着红旗前进。

第八章 a/an "不确指"转"类指" 使一般事物典型化综合化

2.8.1 a/an "类指"来自"不确指"用法

我们曾经讨论过, a/an 类指原属 a/an 不确指范畴, 但 a/an 不确指并非都是类指(1.7.3;1.7.4)。例如, 下列诗句中三个带 a 名词就都是不确指用法, 而不是类指名词。

Go fetch to me a pint o'wine,
And fill it in a silver tassie;
That I may drink before I go
A service to my bonnie lassie...

(R. Burns)

快给我取来美酒一坛, 给我把一只银杯斟满; 好让我在扬帆出海之前, 为祝福我美丽的姑娘一饮而干!

而在以下另一诗中,四个带不定冠词的名词,却可以说既有"类指"名词指一类事物的意义,又看得出原来就是"不确指"用法:

My heart is like a singing bird

Whose nest is in a watered shoot;...

My heart is like a rainbow shell

That paddles in a halcyon sea...

(C. G. Rossetti)

我的心象一只欢快歌唱的小鸟,

她的香巢在一丛滋润柔嫩的枝叶间……

我的心象一颗五彩缤纷的贝壳,

轻轻荡漾在一片风平浪静的海面……

可比较一句谚语: A bird may be known by its song, and a man by his words. (要说鸟怎么样, 听它唱一唱, 要说人怎么样, 听他把话讲。) 句中 a bird 与 a man 都是"类指",同时,显然原来都属"不确指"。

又如 The whole matter lies in a nutshell. (整个这件事非常简单明了。) a nutshell (坚果外壳) 是以不确定的事物作比喻,也可以说是"类指"。

2.8.2 a/an "类指"的典型化、概括化意义

a/an "类指"原是"不确指"转用而来,"类指"用 法只是给名词以典型化、概括化的 意义。由于 a/an "类指"用法的扩展,有时"a/an+名词"已是单纯指一类事物,失去了指一类中不确定事物的意义;这时,该名词(单数)已取得概括的意义,已经"综合化",成为一指类名词:

The goose is a pompous bird. (鹅是一种大模大样的鸟类。) a pompous bird 就是综合化的名词,已失去指个别鸟的

"不确指"意义,专指一种鸟类。比较: She looks as if she can't say boo to a goose. (她看样子很胆怯,好象她连对鹅喊一声的勇气都没有。)句中 a goose 可说是类指,也属不确指。

The swallow is a bird of passage. 燕子是一种候鸟。 a bird of passage 也是综合化的名词,在此不指个别的鸟。比较: Three months' stay had proved me not to be a bird of passage. 住了三个月已证明我不是一只来去匆匆、迁徙不定的飞鸟。句中 a bird of passage 可说是类指,也属不确指,还有指个别鸟的意义。

2.8.3 a/an "类指"与a/an "不确指"的不同

a/an"类指"是指一类中一般的、能代表类属的典型的一个。实际在典型中就有着综合、概括的意义:

I'm as free as a bird. 我象飞鸟一样自由。

Mrs Benson is on a diet and eats like a bird、本森太太在节食,吃得象小鸟似的那么少。

You're like a cage bird. (a cage bird 虽非典型的鸟,但仍指 cage birds 中典型的一个) 你好比笼中鸟。

She's beautiful, fresh as a rose. 她美丽、娇艳有如一朵玫瑰花。

a/an "不确指"则既可能指一般的、典型的,也可能指任何一个,有时是一类中非典型的一个,例如:

You'll hear a bird sing one of these days. (任何一个)不久你会听到有人私下谈论的。

What's in a name? That which we call a rose by any other name would smell as sweet. (Shakespeare) 单单是名字有什么意义呢?我们称之为玫瑰的花朵,即使它被叫作别的什么名字,仍然是同样的芬芳。(《罗米欧与朱丽叶》剧中,朱丽叶谈罗米欧的姓名;他们二人分属结有宿怨的两个家族)句中的

a rose by any other name 显然不是一般的、典型的,不能成为一类,在此只是指设想中不确定的一朵玫瑰花。

2.8.4 a/an "类指"能否替换无冠词复数"类指"

不带冠词的名词复数形式也可以用于"类指",复数"类指"是以一类中的多数一般个体或群体代表一类(1.7.3—1.7.6)。当复数"类指"名词指一般个体时,可以用 a/an "类指"名词予以替换,但当复数"类指"名词指群体时,不能用 a/an"类指"名词来替换它。

1) 复数 "类指" 指一般个体可换作 a/an "类指": Violets are lovely flowers. 紫罗兰是很可爱的花。

A violet is a lovely flower. 一株紫罗兰是一株很可爱的花。(比较 The violet is a lovely flower. 紫罗兰是一种很可爱的花。)

Horses are useful animals. 马是有用的动物。

A horse is a useful animal. 一匹马是一只有用的动物。 (比较 The horse is a useful animal. 马是一种有用的动物。) Phoenixes are believed to be very beautiful. 人们相信凤凰是很美的。

A phoenix is said to be very beautiful. 人们都说凤凰很美。(比较 The phoenix is said to live 500 years, to burn itself, and rise again from the ashes, fresh and beautiful, for another long life. 凤凰这种鸟据说活五百年就自焚而从灰烬中复活,生气勃勃,鲜艳美丽,再活过一次漫长的生命。)

2) 复数 "类指" 指群体不可换作 a/an "类指".

For ten years everything in my life seemed to be coming up roses. Then suddenly, disaster—job, marriage, healthing religious faith, all four began to fail (ODCIE)(不可说 coming up a rose)十年期间,我生活里的一切都是如花似

锦,尽美尽善。然后,突然灾难临头——职业、婚姻、健康、 宗教信仰这四个方面都垮了下来。

Horses were replaced by tractors. (并非 A horse was replaced by a tractor.) 马匹被拖拉机替换了。(较正式,可说 The horse was replaced by the tractor.)

Fine feathers make fine birds. (不说 A fine feather makes a fine bird.) (谚语) 鸟美靠羽毛,人俏靠衣裳。

Birds of a feather flock together. (A bird of the same feather 不能 flock "群集")(谚语) 鸟以群分,人以类聚。

2.8.5 单、复数两种"类指"用于各种可数名词

a/an "类指"与复数 "类指"可用于各类可数名词、包括指人、指动物及其他事物的个体名词、可数集合名词以及可数抽象名词。

1) 指人、动物等的个体名词:

'A man is a fool or a phisician for himself at thirty.
人到 30 岁,不是傻子就能给自己治病。

(Fools make feasts and wise men eat them. 傻子摆下宴席, 聪明人坐在席上吃喝。

Set a beggar on hoeseback and he'll ride to the devil, (谚语) 如果给叫花子马骑, 天知道他会跑到什么鬼地方去。小人得意, 会忘乎所以。

Beggars must not be choosers. (谚语) 讨饭吃不能挑三 拣四。

If wishes were horses, beggars would ride. (谚语) 如果心愿能变成马匹,叫花子就都有马骑了。

[It's a good horse that never tumbles. (谚语) 马有失蹄, 人有失误。

It's an ill bird that fouls its own nest. (谚语) 鸟不糟

蹋自己的窝, 人不贬斥自己的家。家丑不可外扬。

An old bird is not to be caught with chaff. (谚语)只 撒谷壳, 捕不到老鸟。

Cold birds are not to be caught with chaff. (同义谚语)

A telephone is an apparatus that receives and sends speech by electrical means. 电话是通过电接收和发送谈话的装置。

Picturephones are very common now. 电视电话现在已 经很普遍了。

2) 可数集合名词:

A family is a group of people related by blood or marriage. 家庭是由血缘关系或婚姻关系结合在一起的一些人。

New York is no good place to bring up a large family. 要抚养很多子女,在纽约可不是个好地方。

Small families are easier to support. 子女少, 供养就比较容易。

3) 可数抽象名词:

A short story is a brief narrative composed of a series of incidents to present a struggle and its outcome. 短篇小说是一篇简短的记叙文字,由一系列事件组成,以表现一番冲突及其结局。

Success stories are very popular in America. 在美国,描写成名致富的小说非常流行。

The business of a pregnant woman having to eat for two is an old wives' tale. 说怀孕妇女要吃两个人的饭,那是老太婆们的无稽之谈。

On occassions they laughed at them as old wives' tales, 他们有时嘲笑这些话是老太婆们的无稽之谈。

2.8.6 复数 "类指"、a/an "类指"与 the 类指的替换

"the+单数名词"指整个一类事物,也可用于各类名词,包括个体名词、可数集合名词及可数抽象名词(参见1.7.3~1.7.5; 1.7.8):

The bourgeois clap-trap about the family and education, about the hallowed co-relation of parent and child, becomes all the more disgusting, the more by the action of Modern Industry, all family ties among the proletarians are torn asunder, and their children transformed into simple articles of commerce and instruments of labour. (Marx, Engels) (前面 the family 为"类指",后面family ties中,family作定语)无产者的一切家庭联系愈是由于现代工业的发展而被破坏,他们的子女愈是由此而被变成单纯的买卖对象和劳动工具。资产阶级关于家庭、教育,关于父母与子女间神圣关系的空话,就愈是令人作呕。

He wrote an enormous number of short stories, and is as generally accepted a master of the short story as of the novel. 他写了大量短篇小说,一般认为,他既是长篇小说大师,也是短篇小说大师。

the "类指"名词仅在当所指整类可以由群体或个体代表时,才能换作无冠词复数 "类指"或 a/an "类指",替换时可能词句与意义要有变动:

The aeroplane has/Aeroplanes have made the world a small place. 飞机使世界变得不大了。

The dove is a symbol of peace. 鸽子是和平的象征。

A dove may be regarded as a symbol of peace. 一只鸽子可以作为和平的象征。

We often had the visitor or stranger visit us. (Goldsmith)

我们常有客人或生人来访。 (比较 We often had a visitor or a stranger visit us. We often had visitors or strangers visit us. 我们常有一个个客人或生人/常有客人们或生人们来访。)

下列句中的 the "类指"名词,因意指不加分别的整个一类,或意指其包括无一例外的全体成员,故不能由以群体或个体代表一类的无冠词复数"类指"或 a/an "类指"名词予以替换:

The pine is an evergreen coniferous tree. 松树是一种常绿针叶树。

Do you think the horse will be in danger of becoming extinct? 你认为马有绝种的危险吗?

The tiger and the cat belong to the same family of mammals. 虎与猫属于哺乳动物中的同一科。

I heard the news over the radio. 我是从收音机上听到这个消息的。

The telephone was invented by Bell. The telephone is a most useful invention. (ALD) 电话是贝尔发明的。电话是一种非常有用的发明。

The dollar is as good as devalued. 美元实际上是贬值了。

I prefer the cinema to the theatre. 我更喜欢电影,不那么喜欢戏剧。

当 the 类指名词强调具特定属性的特定类属时,也不可换作无冠词复数 "类指"或 a/an "类指"名词:

Is the typewriter or the computer more essential to a modern business? 对于现代企业来说,更重要的是打字机,还是计算机呢?

He had always been interested in that mysterious being—the woman. 对于那种神秘的造物——妇女——他一直颇感

兴趣。

She was quite the woman of business, and always judged for herself. (Mrs Gaskell) 她的确是那种精明强干的女人,总是独立思考,判断问题。

There is also the movement of farm-people to the towns as agriculture becomes more mechanised, though locally there is the flight from city centres to new suburbs as the town invades the country. (前面 the towns 指各具体城市,后面 the town 指与农村相对的整个城市这一类属) 随着 农业更加机械化,还有农村人口流入城市,不过在当地却是随着城市侵占农村地面而造成了人们从城市中心向新辟市郊迁移。

第九章 the"确指"转"类指"使特定 事物综合化、抽象化

2.9.1—2 四种"类指"的不同综合化、抽象化程度

2.9.1 the "类指"的较高综合、概括性

在英语四种"类指"形式——无冠词复数"类指"、a/an "类指"、the "类指"(多用单数名词)、零位冠词"概括指"(用单数名词)(参见1.7.3)——中,名词综合化、抽象化的程度是不同的。

无冠词复数名词原指不确定的几个或者说群体,用于类指 是以群体代表一类,综合化程度不大:

Hens lay eggs. 母鸡下蛋。

a/an + 名词原指不确定的一个,用于"类指"以个体代表一类,综合化程度就较大了。比较,

A hen has laid an egg. (不确指) 一只母鸡下了个蛋。

A hen lays eggs. A hen cackles when she lays an egg. (不确指转"类指") 母鸡下蛋。母鸡下蛋时嘎嘎叫。

而"the+单数名词"原指一类中特定的"某个",其用法扩展开来用于指各类事物中特定的"某类",就使原来的特定事物一变而指整类、整个范畴,其综合 化程度 更大(如下面"类指"的 the hen),有时甚至达到抽象化的程度(如后面"类指"的 the church)。比较:

The hen was sitting on her eggs. (确指) 那只母鸡在孵卵。

On a poultry-farm, the farmhand sets the hen. (类指) 在养鸡场,由鸡场工人安排母鸡孵卵。

The bat is not a bird. (a bird 指一类综合事物, the bat 指整类综合事物) 蝙蝠并非一种鸟类。

The whale is a mammal, not a fish. 鲸鱼是一种哺乳类动物,不是一种鱼类。

Then she went into/entered the church expecting to find her husband there. ("确指") 她走进教堂,想在那里找到她的丈夫。

Paul went to address the church at Rome. (LDCE)("类指") 保罗到罗马去给教徒们讲道。

He went into/entered the church at twenty. At twenty-two he gave up the church for the army. ("类指",抽象化) 他 20 岁担任教会职务。22 岁离 开 教 会参加军队。

但是,零位冠词概括指形式可表示 比 the "类指"更 概括、更抽象的意义:

He's going to church. He attends church regularly.(NDEC) 他正去做礼拜。他经常做礼拜。 What time does church begin?(ALD) Church has begun (英汉四用词典) 礼拜什么时候开始? 礼拜已经开始。

2.9.2 men/a man/the man/man 等用于 "类指"

从"独指"名词到"确指"名词到"不确指"名词,就人对事物的认识来说,是从特殊到一般(参见1.4.1; 1.4.2), Jackson/the Jacksons, the man/men, a man, men.

而各种"类指"用法,则是在上面"一般"的基础上进一步"一般化"或者说概括化、综合化、抽象化。各种"类指"综合化、抽象化程度从较低到较高的顺序是(由左向右)。

无冠词复数类指	a/an 类指	the 类指	零位冠词概括指
men	a man	the man	man

从下列例句中可以看出 men, churches 等类指名词的不同综合化、抽象化程度:

1) men, a man, the man, man

There have been men for only one million years, and there have been civilized men for about 8,000 years. 地球上有了人,只有一百万年;有了文明人,只有约8000年。

Men are mortal. 人固有一死。

A man is known by the company he keeps. 从一个人常和什么人在一起,就能了解这个人。

Be a man! 要有男子汉的勇气!

He's again playing the woman. Play the man! 他又作女儿态了。拿出大丈夫的气概来。

The childhood shows the man as morning shows the day. (Milton) 从小可以看大,正如从早晨可以看一天。

The past of man has been on the whole a pretty beastly

business. 人类的过去整个看来是很野蛮的。

God made the country, man made the town. 上帝创造农村,人类创造城市。

2) churches, a church, the church, church

The bells of churches are soothing to the ear. 教堂的钟声听起来使人心旷神怡。

A church is a building for public Christian worship. 教堂是公众举行基督教礼拜的地方。

He was then qualifying himself for the church. 当时他 正在为担任教会职务而学习。

He heard bells ringing for church. 他听到敲钟声宣告要作礼拜了。

3) birds, a bird, the bird

He has conspired against me like the rest, and they are but birds of one feather. (Dickens) 他象其他人一样曾阴谋 反对我, 他们不过是一丘之貉。

You're a bit of an early bird, aren't you? I didn't expect to see you down for breakfast after that party last night. 你挺能起早的,是不是? 夜里舞会开到那么晚,我想不到你能下楼来吃早饭。

The early bird gathers the worm. It would be best to set out rather early. 早起的鸟才能抓到虫子。还是起大早出发为好。

4) horses, a horse, the horse

Never swap horses when crossing a/the stream. (谚语) 涉到河中别换马。事当关键勿换人。

A man may lead a horse to the water, but he cannot make it drink. (谚语) 饮马马不渴,不能强它喝。

Man has tamed the horse. 人类驯服了马(这种动物)。

5) prisons, a prison, the prison, prison

Prisons and persecutions won't help consolidate his rule. 监禁与迫害无助于巩固他的统治。

Tom hates school. It's a prison to him. 汤姆讨厌上学。 上学对他说来就是关进牢狱。

The law-court, the police and the prison are law-enforcement organizations. 法院、警察局与监狱,都是强制执行法律的组织。

Prison is no cure for first offenders. 对于初次犯罪的人,监禁不是有效的救治办法。

6) schools, a school, the school, school

The city contains schools of art, law, medicine and science. 城里有艺术学校、法律学校、医科以及理工科学校。

The newspaper office is a good training school. 报社是个很好的训练班。

The school is the life-blood of the education system. 学校是教育系统的命脉。

He taught school for twenty years. (NDEC) 他教了 20 年 书。(比较 He teaches in a school. 他在一所学校教书。)

2.9.3-4 "the+单数名词""指类"

2.9.3 the wolf/the play 等概括一类

"the+单数名词"用于"类指",最常见的是概括用法,概括一类人、一类动植物及其他事物,包括一类抽象事物。

All major brands of petrol have comparably high quality. The man in the street cannot discern the difference and doesn't want to be able to. 几种名牌汽油质量都比较好。普通人弄不清它们的差别,也不想弄清。

The chic woman is she who wears the clothes of the moment, but wears them just a shade better than any one else. 优雅的女人也是穿着当时时兴的衣服,但是所穿款式比其他女人略胜一筹。

The Eighteenth Century was the time of English Gentlemen. The English Gentleman is dead. (H. Walpole) 18世纪曾是英国绅士的时代。这种英国绅士现在没有了。

The beggar may sing before the thief. (谚语) 穷光蛋见了贼满自在。叫花子不怕贼偷。

The lunatic, the lover and the poet are of imagination all compact. 狂人、恋爱的人与诗人都富于想象。

To the philosopher. language may be an instrumnet of thought; to the sociologist, a form of behaviour; to the psychologist, a cloudy window through which he glimpses the workings of the mind; to the engineer, a series of physical events; to the linguist, a system of arbitary signs. 对于哲学家说来,语言可能是思想的工具; 对于社会学家说来,可能是一种行为方式; 对于心理学家说来,可能是个影绰绰的窗口,他从中窥见心灵的动态; 对于工程师说来,可能是一系列物理现象,对于语言学家说来,则可能是一套任意确定的讯号。

He hunted the hare, the deer, the wolf, the bear. 他打野兔, 打鹿, 打狼, 打熊。

And that is the man—always—always—when the flower is cut from the tree, it is already a dead flower to him. 男人就是这样, 总是,总是这样——花朵一离开树枝, 对他说来, 就是一朵凋谢的花了。

But the days of the thumb-screw and the rack are over. We no loner burn our herectics at the stake. (D. du Maurier) 但是使用拇指夹和拉肢刑架的时代已经过去。我们已不再把当代异教徒弄到火刑柱上活活烧死了。

有时我们以"the+指物名词单数"指一类人:

The staircase of Time is ever echoing with the wooden shoe going up, the polished boot descending. (J. London)历史的楼梯上总是发出穿粗笨木鞋走上去与穿精心擦亮的皮靴走下来的回响声(指贫穷的劳动者与富足的不劳而食者)。

抽象名词也可以用 "the+单数形式" 指整类:

It will differ from the ordinary "live happy ever after" novel. (NDEC) 它将不同于一般"从此一直过得很美满"的大团圆小说。

The first half of the nineteenth century saw the duel die out. 19 世纪上半叶, 决斗现象就已消失。

The book, the play and the film are strong influences on our social life. 书籍、戏剧与电影对于我们的社会生活有强大的影响。

2.9.4 the wolf/the bottle 等象征一类

"the+单数名词"用于类指,除概括本类人或本类事物的用法外,还常常是以分别的、具体的事物来象征一类相关的综合或抽象事物;这就是修辞格 (figures of speech)中的"转喻"(metonymy)的用法。例如以 the bottle (瓶子)指 alcoholic drink(酒)或 milk in bottles (奶),以 the wolf (狼)指 hunger (饥饿)等。这也表现出 the 类指使名词综合化、抽象化的作用。这种象征用法常见于指人、人体器官、动植物及用品、工具等的名词。

1) 指人名词:

There is still much of the schoolboy in him. 他身上还有很多小学生的气质。

He has nothing of the gentleman about him. 他毫无绅士风度。

He has nothing of the hero in his composition. 在他的性格中毫无英雄气质。

Gradually the father came to his heart. 慈父之情逐渐涌进他的心中。

All the father rose in my heart. (NDEC) 强烈的做父亲的感情在我心头涌起。

He forgot the judge in the father. 做父亲的深情使他忘记了做法官的职责。

He looks every inch the judge. 他处处带着法官的神气。

War can really bring out the brute in a man.(LDCE) 战争确实能使人暴露出他的兽性。

As I approve of a youth that has something of the old man in him, so I am no less pleased with an old man that has something of the youth. 我既赞成老成持重的青年,也同样赞赏保有青春朝气的老人。

"the+姓名"也可用来象征一类抽象事物:

This was cynicism so patient, that all the Forsyte in Soames rejected it. (J. Galsworthy) 这种嘲讽态度太过于容忍了。索姆斯内心里福赛特家人的强烈气概使他颇有反感。

In the boy, the Dartie and the Forsyte were struggling. (ibid) 在孩子心灵中, 达尔提家族与福赛特家族 的两种气质正在进行斗争。

2) 指人体、器官、组织等名词:

Better the foot slip than the tongue trip. (谚语) 说走了 嘴甚于滑跌了腿。失言不如跌跤。

The practised ear may recognize a classic flavour. 有音乐素养的人能够听出古典音乐的韵味。

He is now "a man in the public eye". (NDEC) 他现在是 "公众嘱目的人物"。

Have you the nerve to do it? 你有勇气这样做吗?

Which is better: the breast or the bottle?(LDCE) 用哪种奶喂孩子更好: 喂母奶好还是 (用奶瓶) 喂牛奶好?

I don't think I'd have the face to ask for a holiday just at that time. 我觉得没有脸面偏在那时请求休假。

How could you have the cheek to ask for more? 你怎么有这样的厚脸皮还伸手要?

I can't imagine how I had the gall to hand out all that instant advice. 很难想象当时我怎么就那样大胆地立 刻提出那么多意见。

3) 指动植物及其器官等名词:

Millions of poor people find it hard to keep the wolf from the door, 千百万穷人难以避免饥饿的折磨。

Well, the cat is out of the bag, everybody knows about their marriage. 得了, 秘密败露了, 大家都知道他们的婚事了。

Don't kill the goose that laid the golden egg. 鹅下了金蛋,不要急于取蛋就杀鹅。

If you'll act the giddy goat in front of all your friends, you must expect them to treat you accordingly. 如果你在所有的朋友面前胡作非为,他们定要同样对待你。

Going away, are you? So you're showing the white feather. 躲开, 是吗? 那么你是胆怯示弱了。

The plot has been nipped in the bud. 这阴谋已被铲除于 萌芽之际。

He died in the flower and promise of youth. 正当青春年华、大有前途之时,他竟死去了。

She beat about the bush for a half hour without coming to the point. 她旁敲侧击扯了半个小时还没说出她的用意。

4) 指日常用品、工具、设施等名词:

Poor John's on the bottle again! (LDCE) 可怜的约翰又在喝酒!

You'll get me the sack if you keep dropping in here when I'm supposed to be working. 在头子认为我应该干活的时间你老是来闲坐,你会弄得我被解雇的。

The pen is mightier than the sword. (谚语) 文字比刀 枪更有威力。

He has given up the sword for the plough. 他已丢下刀剑,提起犁杖(离开军队务农去了)。

They that live by the sword shall perish by the sword. ** 靠刀剑生存者将死于刀剑。

He's at home in the saddle. 他精于骑马。

He's ambitious of the crown. 他对王位有野心。

Humanity is the crown of creation. 人类是最高的造物。 He was soon elevated to the bench. 不久他就被提升到法官之职。

He was admitted to the bar at thirty. 30 岁时,他获得承认担任律师职务。

She's gone off the stage/screen. 她已离开舞台/银幕(不再从事戏剧/电影演员工作)。

What is learned in the cradle is carried to the grave. 幼小所学,终生不忘。

- 2.9.5-10 the 用于指阶级、民族等名词单、复数
- 2.9.5 the + 集合名词单数/个体名词复数

在 the 类指表示整类的用法中,值得注意的是指阶级、民族、集团、党派等全体成员的两种说法——用集合名词时,是"the+集合名词单数形式",用个体名词时则是"the+个体名词复数形式"。

下面是一些对应的集合名词与个体名词,带 the 指全体成员、即其整类:

the working class 工人阶级
the proletariat 无产阶级
the peasantry 农民
the bourgeoisie 资产阶级

the landlord class 地主阶级
the aristocracy 贵族阶级
the nobility 贵族
the evil gentry 劣绅
the black people 黑人(民族)
the clergy 全体牧师、教士

the Christiandom 全体基 督徒

the militia 民兵部队
the police 警察 (队伍)
the intelligentsia 全体知识分子

the workers 工人
the proletarians 无产者
the peasants 农民
the capitalists 资本家
the bourgeois 资产阶级分子
the landlords 地主
the aristocrats 贵族
the nobles 贵族
the local tyrants 土豪
the Negroes 黑人
the priests, ministers and
preachers 牧师,教士,传道士
the Christians 基督徒

the militiamen 民兵
the policemen 警察
the intellectuals 知识分子

不过,如果不是指整类、指全体,则所带定冠词 the 就会改换或去掉。以上右列个体名词自然可以改用"a/an+单数形式"或以不带冠词的复数形式,表示其"不确指"或"指听者未知",而左列常带定冠词 the 的不可数集合名词,在滚示"指听者未知"时,也要改用不定冠词 a/an,如。

That country is on the eve of a bourgeois revolution that is bound to be carried out under more advanced conditions of European civilisation, and with a much more developed proletariat...(Marx, Engels) 那个国家正处在一场资产阶级革命的前夜,在整个欧洲文明进一步发展的条件下,当国内有了一个比以前大大壮大的无产阶级时,这场资产阶级革命必将实现……

2.9.6 "the+单数/复数"与无冠词复数

比较下列句中指阶级、民族、集团、党派全体成员的 the 类指用法,特别区分其用单数与用复数名词的两种情况:

Just as, therefore, at an early period, a section of the nobility went over to the bourgeoisie, so now a portion of the bourgeoisie goes over to the proletariat. 正象过去贵族中有一部分人转到资产阶级方面一样,现在资产阶级中也有一部分人转到无产阶级方面来了。

Not only has the bourgeoisie forged the weapons that bring death to itself; it has also called into exitence the men who are to wield those weapons—the modern working class—the proletarians. 资产阶级不仅锻造了置自身于死地的 武器,它还带来了将要运用这种武器的人——现代工人阶级,即无产者。

The Communists disdain to conceal their views and aims. 共产党人不屑于隐瞒自己的观点和意图。

The clergy and laity do not have the same mode of life. (英汉四用词典) 教士们与俗人的生活方式不同。

Both the Conservatives and Liberals have decided to oppose the measure 保守党人与自由党人都决定反对这一措施。(如同 the clergy and laity, 并列名词后者所带冠词可略)

The Catholics also belonged to different sects. 天主教徒也属于不同的几派。

The Norweigians are a seafaring nation. 挪威人是个善于航海的民族。(比较无冠词复数不确指: Norweigians may be found all over the globe.在世界各地都可以见到挪威人。)

The Italians are well-known for their singing. 意大利人以善于歌唱闻名于世。(比较 Italians are often good singers. 意大利人往往是好歌手。)

Unlike the Asians, the Europeans do not cling so strongly to tradition. 与亚洲人不同,欧洲人不那样固守传统。(比较 The mix is much wider—Asians, Africans, Latins—than when that tumultuous variety of Europeans crowded ashore at Ellis Island. 与当年在爱利斯岛纽约海岸蜂拥登陆的、乱嘈嘈的各种国籍欧洲人比较起来,现在这一混杂的范围就更广泛了——又有了亚洲人、非洲黑人、拉丁美洲人。)

2.9.7 public, people, youth 加冠词与否

不可数集合名词一般常带 the 指整类,如 the public,用不定冠词 a/an 或零位冠词形式较少。但有些不可数集合名词,也可用作可数集合名词,如 the people(s);有些还可用作抽象名词,如 the youth。要注意区别这些名词在不同句中的不同性质:

不 可 数 名 词	可 数 名 词
a/an … public (指听者未知) the public (指整类) 公众 (in) public (概括指) 大庭广众(中)	
people(不确指)人们 the people(指整类)人民	a people 一个民族 (不确指或指听peoples 各民族)者未知) the people(s) (各) 该民族 (确指)

不 可 数 名 词	可数名词
youth (不确指) 青年们 the youth (指整类) 青年人	a youth 一个男青年 (不确指或指听youths 男青年们 者未知) the youth(s) 那 (些) 男青年(确指)
youth (概括指) 青春 the youth (确指) 青春	

1) public 等

His novels appeal to a large public/an immense public.他 的长篇小说吸引着广大/极其广大的公众。

The novel took the public by storm. 这部长篇小说立时风靡于群众之中。

The public is (are) the best judge(s). 公众是最好的评判人。

It was eagerly read by interested public. (NDEC) (零位冠词概括指) 深感兴趣的公众都热切地 读 着 这 部书。

I am not used to speaking in public. (零位冠词概括指) 我不惯于在大庭广众中讲话。

2) people 等

If you do that, people will start to talk. 你要是这样做。人们要议论的。

The people were heavily taxed. 人民被课以重税。

Proverbs, like ballads, are the voice of a people, not of an individual person. 谚语象民谣一样,是一个民族的而不是某一个人的声音。

It will bring more closely together the peoples of the two great nations. 它将使两个伟大国家人民间的友好关系进一步密切起来。

3) youth 等

We're trying our best to equip youth for the struggle of life. 我们正尽力把青年人武装起来,以进行生活的斗争。

The youth of our country have lofty ideals. 我国青年有崇高的理想。

Then come kiss me, Sweet-and-twenty,

Youth's a stuff will not endure. (Shakespeare)

快来吻我吧, 妙龄的爱人,

青春年华不会永驻常存。

Her sorrow sucked the youth completely out of her heart. 她的苦难把她心灵中的青春活力完全熬干了。

As a youth, he studied law. 青年时代,他学习法律。

There came a bevy of youths and maidens. 看那边来了一群男女青年。

2.9.8 形容词转为指民族名词的几种情况

指民族成员的名词大多数是由形容词转作名词的,但它们在所用单、复数形式上颇有不同。其由形容词到名词不确指单数,再到名词指全体复数,最普通的形式是:"形容词,如American——a/an+形容词形的名词——the+形容词形的名词——the+形容词形的名词(无复数形式)",如 a(the) American(s); 其次是:"形容词,如 Chinese,——a/an+形容词形的名词——the+形容词形的名词(无复数形式)",如 a(the) Chinese; 另有少数指民族成员的名词仅在指全体成员时用形容词形的名词:"形容词,如 English——a/an+名词——the+形容词形的名词(无复数形式)",如 an Englishman/Englishwoman,the English。此外还有若干指民族成员的名词不是由形容词转成的,如 a Scot, the Scots(有时也用 the 加形容词形的 Scotch 或 Scottish)。四种类型各举例如下:

1) 形容词---a/an+原形容词---the+原形容词-s: the Americans 美国人 American an Amarican the Arabs 阿拉伯人("阿 an Arab Arab/Arabic 拉伯语"为 Arabic) the Brazilians 巴西人 a Brazilian Brazilian the Chileans 智利人 a Chilean Chilean the Czechs 捷克人 a Czech Czech the Filipinos 菲律宾人 a Filipino Filipino the Negroes (加-es) 黑人 a Negro 但 Negro the Germans 德国人 a German German the Greeks 希腊人 a Greek Greek the Italians 意大利人 an Italian Italian the Laotians 老挝人 a Laotian Laotian the Mexicans 墨西哥人 a Mexican Mexican the Russians 俄罗斯人 a Russian Russian the Thais 泰国人 a Thai Thai Yugoslav(ian) a Yugoslav(ian) the Yugoslav(ian)s 南斯 拉夫人 2) 形容词---a/an+原形容词---the+原形容词(指全 体)。 the Burmese 缅甸人 a Burmese Burmese a Chinese the Chinese 中国人 Chinese the Japanese 日本人 a Japanese Japanese the Portuguese 葡萄牙人 a Portuguese Portuguese the Swiss 瑞士人 a Swiss **Swiss** the Vietnamese 越南人 a Vietnamese Vietnamese 3) 形容词——a/an+名词——the+原形容词(指全体): a Briton/Britisher the British 英国人 British a Britisher 非英国本国用语) (a Briton 古旧、书面用语;

English	an Englishman	the English 英国人
French	a Frenchman	the French 法国人
Irish	an Irishman	the Irish 爱尔兰人
Spanish	a Spaniard	the Spanish 西班牙人
Dutch	a Dutchman	the Dutch 荷兰人
Swedish	a Swede	the Swedish 瑞典人
		the Swedes 瑞典人

(具-man 者皆可换用-woman, 如 a Dutchwoman 等)

4) 形容词——a/an + 名词-—the + 名词-s:

Danish	a Dane	the Danes 丹麦人
Finnish	a Finn	the Finns 芬兰人
Icelandic	an Icelander	the Icelanders 冰岛人
Jewish	a Jew	the Jews 犹太人
Polish	a Pole	the Poles 波兰人
Turkish	a Turk	the Turks 土耳其人
Scotch/Scottish	a Scot(man)	the Scots 苏格兰人
	the	Scotch/Scottish 苏格兰人

2.9.9 用于不同所指的指民族名词

比较下列句中指整类的、不确指的以及确指的表示民族成员的名词:

This book is about the English, not the Americans. (the English, the Americans 皆指整类) 这本书讲述的是英国人,不是美国人。

The Japanese are a receptive nation (NDEC) 日本人是个善于接受外界事物的民族。

「The English often drink beer in pubs. 英国人常在小酒店喝啤酒。

⟨ Englishmen often drink beer in pubs. 英国男人常在小

酒店喝啤酒。

The Englishmen were drinking beer when the Americans came in. 那些美国人进来时,那些英国人正在喝啤酒。(三句依次指整类、不确指、确指,下组三句同)

The French are a splendid people when you get to know them. 你了解法国人后会发现他们是个杰出的民族。

Frenchmen are believed to be less conservative than most Englishmen. 据信法国人不象大多数英国人那么保守。

The Frenchmen then went to visit the Chinese. 然后,那些法国人去拜会那些中国人。

The Russians and the British, as well as the Americans, were concerned over Iran's loose security measures. (the Russians, the British, the Americans 皆确指复数的"某些"人)到会的俄国人、英国人同美国人一样,对伊朗很不严密的保安措施都很担心。

Churchill attempted to draw Stalin out on the Far East, but the Russian was reluctant. (the Russian 确指前面提过的单数"那个"人)丘吉尔想引导斯大林谈他对远东的态度,但俄国那方不愿谈论。

"the+民族(国籍)形容词"有时指该民族语言的特定词语、译文等,这时该形容词已名词化(属确指):

"John" is the English for the French "Jean". (the English 也可以说 the English equivalent) 英语里的"约翰"相当法语里的"让"(按法语同源男子名读音音译)。

What is the Chinese for "the whites, the Negroes and the Indians"? 用汉语说"the whites, the Negroes and the Indians" 怎么说法?

2.9.10 the Jew 与 the Jews 指类比较

对于表示阶级、民族、集团、党派的 名词,用 "the+指 其成员的名词复数形式"是强调整类、全体。但如把 该阶级、 民族、集团、党派的成员看作是个别的一类人,象区别 其他各 类人或事物一样,也可以用 "the+指其成员的名词单数形式" 指整个一类。例如:

He became the champion of the Negro, of the downtrod-den white man, of the Indian who was being driven westward and wiped out. 他成为保卫黑人的战士,保卫被压迫白人的战士,保卫被赶到西部、被消灭殆尽的印第安人的战士。(比较 They had the fond idea that the whites are the favorites of the God, the chosen people. 他们盲目认为白人是上帝的宠儿,上帝的选民。)

"Isn't it a fact that the average Jew is a labourer working for about a penny an hour?"—"Ah, that's only for show! They're all money lenders really. They're cunning, the jews!" "难道这不是事实吗? 平常的犹太人 都是干一个钟头 挣一便 士左右的工人啊!"——"啊,那只是装样子呢! 他们 实际都是 放债的。他们可狡猾了,所有这些犹太人!"

The plight of the agricultural labourer was even worse than that of the town worker. His wages were low, and if he lost his job he was turned out of his cottage. (Wood) 农业工人的境况比城市工人的境况更困苦。他们的工资很低,而且一旦丢掉工作就被赶出他们所住的小房。

The lower middle class, the small manufacturer, the shop-keeper, the artisan, the peasant, all these fight against the bourgeoisie, to save from extinction their existence as fractions of the middle class. 中间阶级的下层,即小工业者,

小商人、手工业者、农民,他们全都同资产阶级作斗争,为了维护他们作为中间阶级各阶层的生存,以求免于灭亡。

The two men were magnificent specimens of the young Tyrolian peasant. 这两个男子是阿尔卑斯提罗尔地区青年农民健美的典型。

The proletarian is without property; his relation to his wife and children has no longer anything in common with the bourgeois family relations. 无产者是没有财产的,他们和妻子儿女的关系同资产阶级的家庭关系再没有共同之处了。

It is summed up in the phrase: the bourgeois is a bourgeois—for the benifit of the working class. (Marx, Engels) 资产阶级的社会主义归结起来就是这样一个论断:资产者是这样一种资产者——他为的是工人阶级的利益。(a bourgeois 指听者未知的"一种……")

2.9.11—14 the poor (属性), the pound (数量), the piano(乐器等)

2.9.11 "the+形容词、分词等"用于"类指"

正仿佛许多指民族、集团等的形容词可 加 the 转 作 名词那样 (the blacks; "黑人", the Reds, "印第 安人", "赤 色分子", the whites, "白人"; the whites"白党分子"等),各种形容词以及分词等属性词类,都可以加定冠词 the,表示类指,指具相应属性的一整类人或事物,但该形容词或分词等都不带复数词尾(完全转为名词的自当除外)。例如: the red, "赤 字"; the black, "盈余"; the purple, "显 贵"; the good, "好人"、"美好事物"、"善行"(参见1.7.8)。

当 "the+形容词等"指一类人时,相当复数名词: The young are often intolerant. 年轻人常常不能忍耐。 The defeated are not hidden away somewhere else on the wrong side of town. 生活斗争的失败者并未被隐藏在城中破落地区某处。

There were the poor, the not-so-poor, the well-to-do. 这里有贫民、次贫民、还有家境小康的人们。

With the desperate, the ill, the fatigued, the overwhelmed, one learns not to strike up conversation, but to make brief, sympathetic eye contact, to include them in the human race. 对于那些绝望者、病人、疲惫之人、被 压 垮的人们,我们懂得了不要和他们攀谈,而仅仅投以短 暂 的同情目光,意在把他们也纳入人类之内。

One does a great writer no service by raking out and publishing his juvenilia unless they have some intrinsic merit. Let the dead bury their dead, and let ghouls not disinter them. (ODCIE) 有人把伟大作家少年时代的 作品翻腾出来发表,实际这样对这伟大作家绝无好处,除非那些作品有些内在价值。让过去把该埋葬的埋葬起来,不要让盗尸贼再来发掘。

For he maketh his sun to rise on the evil and on the good, and sendeth rain on the just and on the unjust. (Bible) 因为上帝让太阳既照临恶人也照临 善人,让 雨水既洒向正义的人们也洒向不正义的人们。

In no other American city can the lonely be as lonely. 在任何其他美国城市里孤独的人们也比不上在这里这样孤独。

To the idle few, dress is a business; to the busy many, it is a hobby. (the+形容词+指量代词)对无所事事的少数人,穿着打扮是件大事;对忙忙碌碌的多数人,穿着打扮是一种闲情逸致。

当 "the+形容词等"指一类可数的 (具体或 抽象) 事物

时,也相当于复数名词:

The business is getting out of the red at long last. (the red 相当 the red ink figures) 这家企业终于摆脱了赤字。(比较 By November the business showed black figures. 到十一月文家企业有了赢余。)

He has a strong dislike for the sentimental. (sentimental feelings) 他对于脆弱感伤之情抱有强烈反感。

My dog has a nose for the unusual (unusual things) 我的狗对于不平常的东西都能闻得出来。

当 "the+形容词等" 指一类不可数的抽 象事 物时,相当单数名词:

The best is oftentimes the enemy of the good. (Leave well alone. You may go farther and fare worse.) (谚语)过分讲究常常反而坏事。(见好就收,适可而止。讲究不如将就。)

Governments have a great capacity for ignoring the problems of the future. "Sufficient unto the day is the evil thereof" is their motto. 各个政府都颇有对将来要发生的问题不闻不问的本领。他们的箴言是: "今天的苦恼已够受,何苦再为明天愁?"

They're all in the pink. (in perfect health) 他们身体都非常好。

From the ways he talks and behaves you'd think he was born to the purple or something. (ODCIE) 从他的言谈举 让看来, 你会以为他出身于王侯之类的家庭。

It also has to get rid of the stale and take in the fresh. 它也必须吐故纳新。

注意在 None but the brave deserves the fair. (Dryden) 句中, the brave 仍指复数的人, deserves 用单数 因其主语为 None. 这句话的意思是:只有果敢之士才配得到美人。比较:

Fortune favours the brave. 命运偏向勇敢的人们。 Detraction pursues the great. 伟大的人物常遭贬损。

2.9.12 "the+形容词、分词等"用于"确指"

"the+形容词、分词等"也常常用于"确指"特定的人或事物,并非总属"类指"(参见1.7.10):

we mourned for the dead. 我们哀悼了死者 (单数或复数)。

The soil has been enriched with the blood of the patriotic dead. 爱国烈士们的热血使这片大地成为沃土。

另有不少带 the 的形容词、分词已转作名词:

That's the short of the story. 这就是这一故事的要点。

"So we are to expect no help from the Council?"—"That's the long and the short of it, I'm afraid." (名词性惯用语)"那么我们将不会得到理事会任何帮助了?"——"恐怕,总而言之就是这样。"

The news of the accident came as a bolt from the blue. 发生事故的消息传来有如晴天霹雳。

John arrived out of the blue. 约翰象从天外飞来般突然来到。

He has always been a true blue. 他一直是个 忠实的保守 党人。

Play us another blues! (IDCE) 再给我们演奏一只 忧伤舞曲吧!

He that will avoid the disagreeables of life must avoid the world. 要想逃避生活中不如意之事就得逃避人世。

May I present you my intended? 我向您介绍一下我的未婚夫(妻)吧!

The judge asked the accused to stand up, and he stood up.

法官让被告站起来, 他就站了起来。

Several of the accused were found guilty. 被告人中间有几个被查明有罪。

The deceased/departed left a large sum of money to his wife. 死者留给他的妻子一大笔钱。

Let us pray for all the faithful departed who gave their lives for God. (LDCE) 让我们为所有这些把生命献给上帝的、忠诚的死难者们祈祷吧!

If the camara is stolen the insured receives a sum of money. 如相机被盗,被保险人将得到一笔钱。

Escape me? Never—Beloved! while I am I and you are you,

So long as the world contains us both,

Me the loving and you the loath,

While the one eludes, must the other pursue. (R. Browning) (beloved, 已名词化, the loving 分词, 确指, the loath 形容词, 确指)

想躲开我吗?不要妄想——亲爱的! 只要我是我,你是你,世上有我有你, 我就总是热爱着你,任你总是嫌弃, 尽管一个在躲闪,另一个偏要追求不已。

2.9.13 "the+数词、单位词"指一类数量

与"the+形容词等"指一类具特定属性事物的用法相对应,the 也可以加于数词或表示数量单位的名词,指一类特定的抽象数量。例如,在 Milk is sold by the pint, but sugar is sold by weight. 句中,weight 为不可数抽象 名词,取零位冠词形式,而 pint 为表单位抽象名词,指该类单位就 要加定冠词 the。(牛奶论品脱出售,而糖论重量出售。)

1) by + the + 数词、单位词——"论"、"按",

Most workmen are paid by the week. 对多数工人都是按周付工资。

A jobbing gardener usually charges by the hour. 打零工的花匠一般提出按干活钟点算工钱。

We buy our coal by the ton. 我们论吨买煤。

A draper buys cloth by the roll, but sell it by the yard. 卖布的商人成包地购进布匹,但论码出售。

Butter is sold by the pound, and eggs by the dozen. 黄油论磅卖,鸡蛋论打卖。

The corn sells by the bushel. 这种谷物论蒲式耳卖。

Their sheep are sold by the thousand. 他们的羊论千只出售。(比较 Birds flock together by thousands. 成千上万只鸟飞到一起。)

He sells berries by the handful. 他论"把"卖浆果。

We undertook the work by the piece. 我们承担这项工作是按件计酬。

2) to + the + 单位词----"每":

There are fifty pieces to the box. 每箱有50件。

There lived about two hundred persons to the square kilometre. 每平方公里大约有 200 居民。

The car does ten kilometres to the litre. 这辆 小汽 车每 升汽油跑 10 公里。

I was so much excited that my pulse, whose ordinary action is scarcely sixty beats to the minute, was accelerated to eighty or eighty-five. 我非常激动, 平常每分钟跳动不到60次的脉搏, 当时竟加快到80以至85次。

In this scale there are sixteen ounces to the pound. 这种秤每磅是 16 英两。

3) (货物价钱) +a/an 或 the...--每…… (多少钱)(参见1.3.7):

This tea sells at three shillings a/the pound. 这种茶每磅卖3先令。

I bought the cloth at two dollars a/the yard. 这种布我是每码2美元买的。

What is the price an/the ounce? 1英两多少钱?

This wool costs twenty yuan a/the jin. 这种毛线每斤20元。

2.9.14 对乐器、影剧、球类的 the 类指用法

指经常演奏的乐器,在英语中总是用 the 类指,指一次演奏的乐器也常用 the 类指:

"Do you play a musical instrument?"—"Yes, I play the trumpet." "你演奏什么乐器吗?" ——"是啊, 我吹小号。"

He rapidly became a successful player and teacher of the piano. 他很快就成为一位优秀钢琴家、钢琴教师。

He accompanied her on the piano. (指过去一次或过去经常为她伴奏) 他用钢琴给她伴奏。

比较确指的、不确指的与"指听者未知"的 piano 及后面例句中的其他乐器:

The piano has not been played on since my daughter left home four years ago. (确指) 这架钢琴,从我的女儿 4年前离家到现在,一直没有人弹奏过。

I couldn't afford to buy a piano. (不确指) 我买不起钢琴。

He made only a fair charge for tuning a piano and some other services. (指听者未知) 他给一架钢琴调好了音,还干了些别的活儿,只收了些合理的费用。

一些小型乐器因不属固定设备(2.3.7), 较常见其 a/an... 形式表示一次演奏所用听者未知的乐器:

He played a nice tune on a banjo. 他用班卓琴 弹了一首很好听的曲子。(经常演奏该乐器还要用 the 类 指: He often played us popular tunes on the banjo. 他常用班卓琴给我们弹奏流行乐曲。)

She was playing on a mouth organ/harmonica. 她在吹口琴。

A young herdsman made sad music on a reed pipe. 一个年轻的牧人用牧笛吹奏出忧伤的乐曲。

再比较下列两组例句中的各种所指:

- I find that listening to one man playing a guitar and singing folk ballads is an exciting experience. (不确指) 我发现听一个人一面弹吉他一面唱民歌,真是引人入胜。
- They started moving around me, dancing and singing to the music of a guitar. (指听者未知)他们围着我活动起来,在吉他乐曲伴奏下跳着舞、唱着歌。
 - Also, she had a cat and she palyed the guitar. (类指) 而且,她养着猫,她还弹吉他。(常弹)
- What humiliation when anyone standing beside me could hear a distant flute that I could not hear! (指听者未知) 远处的笛音我听不见,我身边任何别人都听得见,这是多么难为情啊!
 - Bill put the flute on his lips. (确指) 比尔把长笛放到嘴边。
 - He is brilliant at the flute. (类指) 他吹奏长笛,吹得非常好。
 - 乐器名称也可用其 a/an 类指。比较起来, a/an 类指强

调该类中的任何一个, the 类指强调将该类区别于他类:

A violin is played with a bow. (任何一把) 小提琴(都) 是用琴弓演奏的。

She then played a solo on the violin. 然后她演奏了一首小提琴独奏曲。

A viola is a stringed instrument larger than the/a violin. (the 类指有时可换作 a/an 类指) 中提琴是一种 比 小 提琴大些的弦乐器。

乐器名称也有时用零位冠词形式:

She played first violin. (指抽象职位)她演奏第一小提琴。 He is second violin of an orchestra. 他是一个管 弦 乐队的第二小提琴手。

并列乐器名略 the,不等于零 位冠 词形式: He wrote a concerto for violin, cello and piano. (参见 3.2.3) 他写了一支小提琴、大提琴与钢琴的协奏曲。

个体名词 a cinema (电影院)、a theatre (剧院) 在 转 指 "电影艺术"、"戏剧艺术"时用 the 类指形式:

Mary Pickford was one of the first stars of the cinema. 玛丽·皮克福德是最早的电影明星之一。

Are you interested in (the) cinema/drama? (AID) 你对电影/戏剧感兴趣吗?

How do you care for the (modern) theatre? 你喜欢 (现代) 戏剧吗?

说"去看电影"也用类指的 the cinema, 而且可以用复数类指形式 the movies/pictures:

Let's go to the cinema/movies/pictures tonight. (LLCE) 今天晚上,咱们看电影去吧。(比较 We went to see a film/play.)

说"去看戏"常用的 We went to the theatre. 中,所用

也属类指名词。

但 theatre 有时用零位冠词形式指戏剧效果:

A good production of Hamlet is real theatre. 《哈姆雷特》如能演好,会有很强的戏剧效果。

Some books, though very interesting to read, do not make good theatre. (LLCE) 有些小说读起来虽然很有趣,但编成戏,戏剧效果并不太好。

与影剧、乐器名称常用 the 类指不同,各种球类运动总是用零位冠词概括指形式:

No doubt football is at the top of the list. Table tennis and badminton are becoming more and more widespread. 足球无疑居于首位。乒乓球和羽毛球也日渐流行起来。

I don't play tennis very well: let's just say I play at tennis. 网球我打不好, 只能说玩玩网球。

比较:作为运动的"玩球"中,ball 用零位冠词概括指形式,而在并非运动的"玩球"中,ball 却可加用不同冠词:

The boys were playing ball in the field. 男孩子 们在球场上打球。

The baby was playing with a ball. 那婴儿在玩皮球。 The cat played with the ball of twine. 猫在玩线球。

第 三 编英语冠词惯用法

第一章 冠词与某些代词、形容词、副词连用的惯用法

3.1.1-2 冠词可以或不可与哪些代词等连用

3.1.1 冠词与部分代词等连用居词组中位

在英语中,不定冠词 a/an 与定冠词 the 可以 分别 和部分代词连用,连用时冠词不一定居于前位,与某些代词连用时,冠词惯用于整个名词性词组的中位。当冠词与某些形容词、副词连用时,也惯用于整个名词性词组的中位。

英语代词有实体代词 (substantive pronouns) 与属性代词 (attributive pronouns) 两大类。实体代词,如 I, mine, one, something 等,代替名词;而属性代词,如 my (boy), this (one), some (others), all (fours)等,修饰或限定名词及相当词语,其大多数也可以代替名词 (属性代词中仅物主代词 my 等及不定代词 every、否定代词 no 不能代替名词)。

冠词 a/an 与 the, 按惯用法,可与下 表 中 的一些 实体代词、属性代词连用,常与下表中的一些指量 形容 词 及一些度量副词连用:

1)与某些实体代词:	连用,冠词居前位	
不定代	one other (other 也可用作 属性代词)	a (…) one another (an 与 other 合为一词)	the () one/ones the other/others
词	something somebody	a something a somebody	the something the somebodies
否定 代词 2	nothing nobody) 与某些属性代词	a nothing a nobody 、形容词及副词连用,冠词:	the nothings 微不足道之事 (或人) the nobodies 微不足道之人 多居名词性词 组中位
指量代词	many few little	many a/an a great/good many a few () a little ()	the many () the few () the little ()
概括代词	both all		both the all the
确定 代词 疑问	such	such a/an	
代指形词	what half (及 double 等)		half the … double the size等
修形词度副饰容的量词		so+形+a/an … as/too/how/+形+a/an…	: ! !
直接修	more (及no less)	more a fool than 但 more silly a remark 或 a more silly remark (用形容词时)	
饰名词的	quite	quite a lady (quite a good film 着重 quite 一词, a quite good film 并重 quite good 二词)	(by diffice the wrong way,

度	rather	rather a theorist	rather the theorist I've
煮		(rather a good idea 着重	been expecting rather the cold day I hop-
副		good idea并重 rather	
词		good 二词)	the rather cold weather
			we've been having

(例句见 3.1.3 以下各节)

3.1.2 冠词不与某些代词直接连用

下列属性代词在作为定语修饰或限定名词时,由于已指明了名词所指是不确定的或确定的事物,因而名词前如使用这些代词,就不再使用不定冠词 a/an 或定冠词 the, 这就是说,冠词不可与这些属性代词直接连用(注意有时带冠词的名词可借助介词 of 与其中某些属性代词连用)。

指示代词 this, that, these, those

物主代词 my, your, his, her, its, our, their 等 (但借助介词可说 an old friend of mine, the new idea of theirs, 见1.5.6; 1.5.7)

不定代词 any, some, every, each, either (但借助介词可说 any of the three boys, some of the books, every one of the rooms, each of the babies, either of the two sisters)

否定代词 no, neither (但借助介词可以说 neither of the twins)

指量代词 much (但借助介词连接可说 He's much of a hero, but not much of a scholar. 他颇有英雄气派,但是没有学者的教养。It's not much of a day for a walk. 这天气可不大宜于散步。Much of the time was wasted. 大部分时间都浪费了)。注意,在下列各句中, much 为副词。The patient's condition is much the same. 病人情况差不多没

变化。She's much the fatter of the two. 两人相比,她胖得多。But she is much the quickest worker of them all. 但她比他们所有这些人干活都快得多。It's dark. So much the better! They won't see us climbing the wall. 天黑了。更好了! 咱们爬墙,他们看不见。

疑问代词 which, whose (但借助介词可以说: Which of the two/three philosophers? 比较: What a philosopher! 多么聪明的哲学家啊! What an idea! "多妙的主意啊!"或"多么奇怪的想法啊!")

在实体代词中, 冠词不与 who, I, you, he, she, it, 等及 myself, yourself, yourselves, everything, everybody, anything, anybody 等连用, 冠词不与实体代词 none 连用, 但借助介词可以说 none of the children.

3.1.3-5 前位冠词+几种代词(+名词)

3.1.3 a/the one, another, the other

英语冠词 a/an, the 与实体代词 one 或 other 连用,用 得非常普遍:

Never a one had ever seen the ghost. 从来没有一个人看见过这个鬼。

Many a one had seen the ghost before. 好多人以前 见过这个鬼。

You're a fine one! 你真是好样的啊! (反语,讽刺) You're a right one! 你干得真行啊! (意为"你真是个傻瓜!")

His lot is an enviable one. 他的命运是令人羡慕的。

He's a one. (新英汉词典)他真是个怪人。

He's a one for football. 他爱踢足球真是入了迷。

Oh, you're a one, telling that joke in front of the priest! 你真胆大包天,在神父面前讲这样的笑话!

Have you ever heard the one about the travelling salesman and the farmer's daughter? 你听说过关于货 郎和农民女儿的故事吗?

There come the young ones. 小孩儿们来了。

We achieved victories one after another/one after the other. 我们取得了一个又一个胜利。(另一说法 victory 用 单数: We achieved one victory after another:)

3.1.4 a/the + something/nothing 等

冠词 a/an, the 还偶见和不定代词 something, somebody, 以及否定代词 nothing, nobody 连用:

You have a something in you lovable and worth preserving. (Stevenson) 在 你身上有某种让人喜爱的、值得保留的 东西。

A wonderful something was about to take place. 某种奇妙之事即将发生。

And there, glowing with faint blue light in the glass tubes on the table was the something that the Curies had worked so hard to find: Radium. 那里,在桌上玻璃试管中发射着淡淡蓝光的,就是居里夫妇那样艰苦努力所要找到的那种东西:镭。

You thought yourself a somebody. 你以为你自己是个重要人物。

We could tell a lot about each of the somebodies on the list, but about the nobodies on it, little did we know. 关于这名单上的每个知名人士,我们都能讲很多情况,但关于那些无名之辈,我们所知无几。

A nothing vexed him. (E. Bronte) 一件小事烦恼着他。

The nothings of life kept on vexing her. 生活中那些零星小事一直在使她很苦恼。

She is an interesting person, but her husband is a real nothing. 她是个很有风趣的人,但她丈夫真是毫不足取。

Don't marry a nobody like James. 不要和詹姆士这样毫无地位的人结婚。

I want to be famous. I'm tired of being a nobody. 我要成名。我厌烦这种默默无闻的境况。

Only a few nobodies attended the meeting. 只有几个无关紧要的人到会。

有些词典认为 somebody (大人物), nobody (小人物), nothing (琐事) 可看作名词, 但未提到 something 转取 名词意义 (如 WNCD) 等。something 虽无特定的名词意义,同样可见到其带冠词或带指示代词:

We must believe that each one of us is able to do something well. And when we discover what this something is, we must work until we succeed. (Marie Curie) 我们必须相信我们每个人都能做好一种事。一旦我们弄清这种事是什么事,我们就必须坚持做下去,直至成功。

3.1.5 a/the + few/little 等

冠词 a 或 the 常常与指量代词 few, little. many 连用,而 目构成许多惯用语。

a very few 有很少几个 (≠very few 没有几个)
a few people 有少数人 (≠few people 没有几个人)
some few books 有些书
not a few books 不少的书
quite a few students 颇有一些学生

a good few of them 他们中不少的人
a little water 有些水 (≠little water 没多少水)
not a little trouble/no little trouble 不少的麻烦
many a time (many, many times) 许多次

- a good many 好多
- a great many 许多

〔比较:用于可数名词的 a (large) number of, 若干 (许多);用于不可数名词的 a large/great amount of, 大量的, a good/great deal of, 许多;兼用于可数与不可数名词的 a lot of 许多, lots of 许许多多, plenty of 很多很多〕

"Are there any left yet?"—"Yes, there are still a few." "还有剩下的吗?"——"有,还有几个。"

"Have you got any ink?"—"Yes, I've got a little." "你有墨水吗?"——"有,我有点墨水。"

"Have you got many/much here?"—"No, very few/little indeed." "你这儿多吗?"——"不多,真没有几个/多少了。"

His theory is very difficult; few people understand it. 他的学说很深奥,没有几个人能够理解。

His theory is difficult, but a few people understand it. 他的学说很难懂,但有少数人还是能够理解。

There were only a selected few of my old friends present. 只有我选定的少数老朋友出席。

It appeals to the initiated few only. 这部 著作 只是使那些少数已经入门的人感兴趣。

I had but a few/little, I gave him the few/little (that) I had. (I gave him what few/little I had.) 我只有几个/不多了。我把我所有的那几个/不多一点都给了他。

"There's a little hope, I believe."—"No, there's by now little hope, or rather, no hope left of his succeeding." "我

相信,还有一线希望。"——"不然,到现在,他已没什么成功的希望,或者应该说,已毫无成功的希望了。"

Many a day did I wait for his return. 我等着他回来, 等了好多天。

Many a man has made the same mistake. 许多人犯过 同样的错误。

We have spent many a (long) day together. 我们在一起度过好多日子。

Many a little/pickle makes a mickle. (谚语) 积少成多。

Not a bit did the privileged few care about what the enslaved many needed to make a bare living. 少数特权者 丝毫也不考虑广大被奴役者需要什么来维持最低生活。

3.1.6—11 一些代词、副词等+中位冠词+名词 3.1.6 both/all+the ...

冠词中仅有 the 可与概括代词 both, all 直接连用于名词,注意直接连用时 the 所取名词性词组中间的位置,并比较二表左、中、右三栏说法:

1) 概括代词 both (不包括其副词用法)

•	不用冠词、介词	用冠词 the	再用介词 of
独指名词	both China and Japan	both the sun and the moon	
可数名词	both parents (因只有二人,一般相 当确指)	= both the parents	名词前很少用介词: both of the parents, 但 both of us 等
复数	both boys and girls (不确指)	≠ both the boys and the girls (确指)	

	不用冠词、介词	用 冠 词 the	再用介词 of
可数名词单数		both the boy and the gir1 (比較 We'11 send both a boy and a gir1.)	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
不可数词	both tea and coffee (概括指)	≠ both the tea and the coffee (确指)	

2) 概括代词 all (不包括其副词用法)

	不用冠词、介词	用短词 the	再用介词 of
独指名词	all China/Asia	all the world 或 the whole world	较少用介词: all of the world
:	all three children	= all the three child- ren	
可	all countries (相当确指全部)	= all the countries of the world (确 指全部)	
数		≠ all the countries there (确指部分)	
名	all books (不确指,有 概括 意义)	≠ all the books (确 指)	all of the books (美 国英语常用 of)
词	all kinds of/of all kinds		
复	be all thumbs 笨得很		
数	be all eyes/ears 全神贯注地看/听着		
	be all tears/smiles 泪流满面/满面笑容		

	不用冠词、介词	用冠词 the	再用介词 of
	除少 数常用 时间名词	all the way	
闻	外,不可不加冠词	但较少说 I haven't	可说 I haven't read
ы		read all the book.	all of the book. (强
数		我还没把全书读完。	调 a11) 或 … the
名	all year (round)	all the year (round)	whold book.
•	all morning/night	all the morning/night	all of the year (美
词	二则为美国说法	二则为英国说法	常用 of)
单	all day (long)	较少说 all the day	
数	all week/month/sum-	较少说 all the week 等	
.,,,,	mer		
	不说 all century	(through the century)	
	all people (概括指)	≠all the people(确指)	all of the people
不一	all food/time	≠all the food/time	较少说 all of the food
可			等
数	beyond all doubt		
名	be all energy		
词	with all speed	·	

二表中 both, all 是否与冠词连用, 意义上 的不同 可见于以下例句:

There are shops on both sides of the street. 街道两边都有商店。 Hold it in both hands. 两手拿着这个。 I can do it both ways. 这个活计,用两种办法我都能做。

Both (of) the brothers are honest. (用冠词比 无冠 词语气强些) 兄弟二人都很诚实。

Workers of all countries, unite! 全世界 无产者,联合起来! (根据《共产党宣言》德 文本的汉语通常译法)

He has travelled (over) all the countries on the Continent. 他走遍了欧洲大陆上的所有国家。

All children like playing. 孩子们都爱玩耍。

All the children were asleep. 这些孩子都睡了。

All men are born/created equal. 所有的人生来都是平等的。

All the men were asked to stay behind. 所有那些男人都被要求留下来了。

The people of this modern age are the busiest workers of all time. 当今的现代人是自古以来最忙的劳动者。

She was ill all the time she was abroad. 她在国外那段时间,一直在闹病。

when I was a kid, I was all thumbs. 我小的时候, 笨得很。

He's such a kind man: he's all heart. 他对人太好了: 真是满腔热情。

Do you think that a life that is all beer and skittles can prove very satisfying in the long run? 你以为光是喝啤酒、玩九柱戏这样吃喝玩乐的生活,时间长了能够使人满足吗?

3.1.7 such/what + a/an...

冠词仅是 a/an 可与确定代词 such 及疑问代词 what 直 接连用于名词,注意直接连用时,a/an 取名词性词组中间的位置:

1) such a/an... 强调特定属性,促使听者注意:

He's such a fool, such an old fool. 他是那么傻,那么一个老傻瓜。

I've got such a headache. 我头疼得太厉害了。

Don't be in such a hurry. 不要那么着急。

You gave me such a fright. 你可把我吓了一大跳。

The concert was such a triumph. 音乐会非常成功。

"such a/an …"中即使不用形容词,其含意也是: such a great/big... 或 such a good... 或者 such a terrible... 等等

(Swan)。说话人在这里促使听话人注意 他所 未 知或未深知其程度的一种属性。

such a/an... 所指属性有时是上文提过的,但在重新提出时,说话人或者认为该属性在听话人还应进一步确认,或者是在以该属性引出同属性事物中新的、不确定的一个:

No, I can't take that stupid woman to wife. I can never tolerate such a fool. (该属性还应进一步 认识) 不行,我不能娶那个蠢 女人。我受不了那样一个傻瓜。

Once he said, concerning a wound that was healing healthily: "It is the main object of my life to find out how to procure such a result in all wounds." (同属性事物中新的一个) 有一次谈到一个愈合得很好的伤口,他说: "我生活的主要目的就是要研究出来,怎样在治疗所有的创伤中,都取得这样的效果。"

such a/an 所接名词也可以带后位定语,还可用"名词 + such as..."结构:

I'm not such a fool as to believe that. 我还没有那么傻,不至于相信那套话。

This isn't such a dear stuff as silk (is). 这不是丝绸那样 贵重的衣料。

It's not such a good book as I expected. 它不是我预期的那样一部好书。

The host should have delivered a speech on an occassion such as this. (on such an occassion) 在这样一个场合,主人本应该讲讲话的。

2) what a/an...强调特定属性,意指罕见或前所未有、未知:

What a fool! What an old fool (he is)! 他多么傻呀! 多么傻的老傻瓜呀! (比较 such a fool, such an old fool)

What a hurry we were in! 我们当时多匆忙啊!

What a fright I've had! 可把我吓坏了!

What a (great) triumph! 多么辉煌的胜利 (成就) 啊!

用于复数名词或不可数名词时, such, what 后面 没 有冠词:

She shouldn't make her appearances on occassions such as these/on such occassions. 在这样的场合,她不应该露面。

She told us such funny stories that we all laughed and laughed until our sides ached. 她给我们讲的故事都太逗乐了,我们笑啊笑啊,笑得两肋都疼了。

What funny stories she tells 她讲的故事多逗乐啊!

We had such fun. 我们玩得那么有意思。

What fun! 多有意思啊!

It's such sport. 那可真好玩。

What sport! 多么好玩啊!

Have you ever seen such (nice) weather there? 你在那里见过这么好的天气吗?

What beautiful weather! 多好的天气啊!

3.1.8 half/double + the..., half a/an...

指量形容词 half,double 度量副词 twice 等与冠词 a/an, the 连用时,冠词多居于名词性词组中位,但 a/an 有时居于 名词性词组前位。

1) half/double/twice the...

Half the car was damaged. (可数名词单数) 那 辆小汽车有一半被毁坏了。

The first blow is half the battle. (谚语) 头一个回 合打得好, 前半局的胜利就拿到了。

Half the boys are here. (可数名词复数) 男孩子们有一半

在这里。

Half (of) the plums are bad. 李子有一半是坏的。

Half (of) the fruit is bad. (不可数名词) 这水 果 有一半 是坏的。

以名词 half 为中心词时,则用 of 引导的介词 短语为 其定语:

You've taken the bigger half of the cake. 你拿了那 块蛋糕的一大半。

He lived in the latter half of the eighteenth century.他生活在18世纪后半叶。

double 作为形容词修饰名词: double doors (双扇门),而 副词 twice 仅惯用于修饰某些名词。

double 最常加于 the size, the amount, the strength, the weight, the capacity, the distance 等带定冠 词的名词,表示两倍的大小、数量、强度、重量、容积、距离等。

He demanded double the usual fare. 他要我们付相当平常两倍的车钱。

The students in this school are double the number of those in your school. 这个学校学生 数相当 你们学 校的两倍。

I offered him double/twice the amount, but he still refused. 我提出给他那个数的两倍他还是不干。

He eats twice the amount that you eat. (...twice what you eat.) 他的饭量有你的两倍。

He's twice the man he was. (新英汉词典) 他比过去强壮了一倍。

2) half a/an...; a half/ double...

英国英语 美国英语 通 用 说 法 half an hour a half hour 2 hours and a half (较普通)

half a month	a half month	或 2 and a half hours a month and a half (较普通) 或 one and a half months
half an inch	a half inch	
half a mile	a half mile	
half a dozen	a half dozen	

a half-dozen 指一个单位"半打"; two half-dozens 半 打一 份,要两份

在英国英语中"a half + 名词"皆属固定词组:

- a half salary 半薪 a half note 二分音符
- a half length 半身像 a half-brother 异父(母)兄(弟) 比较 a halfpenny ['heipni] 半便士硬币, two halfpennies 两 枚半便士硬币

"a double + 名词"却属正常形式,并 无 "double a/an + 名词"用法。

- a double bed 双人床
- a double character 双重性质
- a double meaning
- a double track (可 对开) 双

双重意义

轨铁路

adouble purpose 双重目的 但 double windows (复数) 双层窗户

engage in double dealing (不可数名词) 耍两 面 派 (或者 说 play the double game)

3.1.9 so/as/too/how/good + a/an...

度量副词 so, as, too, how, however 因强调 度量 而居最 前,随之为其所修饰的形容词,再加中位冠词 a/an 与名词,构 成一名词性词组:

I had never before met so gentle a person. (文雅 说法: 相当常说的…such a gentle person.) 我从未见过这样温文尔 雅的人。

It was so warm a day that we decided to go to the sea. (文雅说法; 更常说...was so warm that...或 was such a warm day that...) 天太好了,我们决定到海边去玩。

不能说 They are so gentle people. Those are so warm days... (集合名词指复数或复数名词,前不用 a/an,也不用 "so+形容词")

I am as good a man as he. 我和他一样是一个人。

It was as pleasant a day as I have ever spent. (Swan) 那是我曾领略过的最愉快的一天。

It's too hot a day to work. 天太热, 干不了活了。

She was much too good a wife to forsake him. 她是个非常贤慧的妻子,绝不会抛弃他。

不能说 It's too hot weather. They're too kind girls to refuse. (不可数名词或复数名词, 前不用 a/an, 也不用 "too+形容词")

偶见a/an 置于 too 前: He was trembling and sweating as if he had smoked a too strong cigar. (Galsworthy) 他在发抖、冒汗,好象是抽了一支劲儿太大的雪茄烟。

How accomplished a pianist is he? 他这个钢琴家造诣如何?

I know how great a labour he had undertaken. 我知道他从事的是多么艰巨的劳动。

Miss Langham arm in arm with Mr. Peabody—how astonishing a sight! (What an astonishing sight!) 兰亨小姐和皮保第先生臂挽着臂——多么让人惊讶的情景啊!

不能说 How pretty clothes she wears! (复数名词前不用 a/an, 也不用"how+形容词")

Travelling on however humble a scale is expensive in

Scotland. 在苏格兰旅行,无论怎么不讲究,也是很昂贵的。

However good a stereo you have, you will never get absolutely perfect reproduction. 无论你的 立体 声录 音机多好,你复制的录音也不会完美如初。

3.1.10 more/no less + a/an...

表示比较的度量副词 more, no less 也因为强调, 经 常居前位, 置于冠词 a/an 与名词前, 该名词性词 组 中 无 形 容 词 (有形容词时, 多用正 常 词 序 a/an+more/less+形容词+名词).

He is more a fool than a rogue. (Wood) 与其说他是个无赖,不如说他是个傻瓜。

It is even more a poem than a picture. 虽然这是一幅画,却更象是一首诗。

He is no more a god than we are. 我们不是神仙,他同样也不是神仙。

He is no more a company director than I am. (Wood) 他并不是什么公司经理,正如我不是公司经理一样。

You're no less a person than the prime minister. 您不是别人,您就是首相本人。

Nevertheless, since it was breed champion last year at no less a place than Crufts, it must be worth a lot of money. (ODCIE) 不过,因为这只狗是克拉夫次 这样 著名地方去年的良种冠军,它一定值好多钱。

He was accused of no less a crime than high treason. 他竟被控犯下了叛国大罪。

It would be no less an event than a world war. 那将是等于一场世界大战的严重事变。

比较 Our soldiers fought with no less daring than

skill. (ALD, 不可数 名词 daring 前 无 a/an, 词 组 no less... than...也没有"就是"、"竟是"之类意义) 我们的士兵作战既英勇无畏又战术灵活。

名词性词组中用形容词时,多用 a/an 居前位的正常词序。 A no less important question now arises. 这就发生了一个同样重要的问题。

A more silly remark I cannot imagine. (较少说 More silly a remark I cannot imagine.) 比这更愚蠢的议论,我想是没有了。

3.1.11 quite/rather + a/an (the) ...

度量副词 quite 有两种大不相同的意义。当 quite 用于名词、或用于表示确定属性(无程度差别)的形容词和分词时 (quite the woman of business, quite another story, quite perfect/impossible, quite finished),是完全肯定,意为 completely, entirely, absolutely, positively (完全、全然、十分、的确)。而当 quite 所修饰形容词和分词表示的是有程度差别的属性时 (quite good, quite impressed),则是部分肯定,有所保留,语气稍强于fairly,稍弱于rather,大大弱于very (Swan),可以说意为 more or less, somewhat ,comparatively, to a cartain extent (或多或少、可算、比较、相当)。

度量副词 rather 虽无明显的两种不同意义,也 随 着所 修饰的名词或不同性质形容词而有语气上的强弱变化。

对于 very 所表示客观上的"很"、"非常"而言, quite 与 rather 表示的是主观认为的程度, 从"十分"到"有几分"。

下表列举了语气从强到弱的各种 quite/rather 结构,表后 例句顺序本此:

quite/rather the	quite/rather a/an	
quite the +名 (名词): 最强 rather the +名: 较强 quite the +形(形容词)+名: 很强 rather the +形+名: 较强	quite a/an +名。 很强 rather a/an +名。 较强 quite a/an +形+名。 (根据 形容词性质)从很强到较弱 rather a/an+形+名。 较强	
——(不说 the quite…) the rather + 形 + 名: 较弱 (本栏 the 居前位)	{ a quite +形+名: 较弱 a rather +形+名: 较弱 (本栏a居前位)	

1) quite/rather the + 名: 最强/较强

He's quite the gentleman. 他全然是标准的绅士。

She looks quite the lady. 她看样子全然是典型的贵妇人。

I thought quite the opposite. 我的想法与此完全相反。

It's quite the thing to be in love. 爱上了一个人,那真是妙不可言。

The Italian dress materials are quite the thing this summer. 今年夏天,意大利衣料是最时髦的。

She isn't quite the thing today. 今天她神色有些不正常。 It's quite(all) the same to me. (the same, 代词) 对我说来,这完全一样。

That's rather the impression I wanted to give. (Swan) 那正是我想让他们产生的那种印象。

He's rather the theorist I've been expecting. 他正是我一直期望的那样的理论家。

2) quite/rather the + 形 + 名. 很强/较强
You're going quite the wrong way. 你走的是完 全错误的路。

Hers is quite the right answer. 她的回答完全正确。 You're quite the most exciting man. 你的确是最能使人振 奋的人。

He's almost, but not quite, the cleverest boy in the class. 他几乎是(但并非绝对地是)班里最聪明的孩子。

It's quite the same thing. 这完全是一回事。

It's rather the cold day I hoped to have. 今天正是 我 所 盼望的这么个冷天。

3) quite/rather a/an+名: 很强/较强

He's quite a man/She's quite a woman now. 现在,他 (她)已经长大成人了。

Quite a man! 真是个男子汉!

She's quite a girl/beauty. 她真是个好姑娘/漂亮的人。

He grows all his own vegetables. He's quite a gardener, you know. 他吃的菜都是自己种。你知道,他真是个园艺家啊!

That's quite a car you've bought. 你买的那辆可真是一辆好汽车啊!

It takes quite a time. 这事费了好长的时间。

There was quite a party. 聚会起来的人真够多的。

There's quite a pint left. 剩下的还足有一品脱。

He isn't quite a gentleman. 他不大够一个正人君子。

He made quite an effort, but it was not good enough. 他 做了很大努力,但事情办得不大好。

He is rather a theorist. (费致德《现代英语惯用法词典》) 他是个相当不错的理论家。

She's rather a dear/a fool. 她是个相当 可爱的人/很傻的傻瓜。

It's rather a pity/nuisance/mess. 真是挺遗憾/真是挺讨厌/真是一塌糊涂。

4) quite a/an+形+名: 从很强到较弱

When I came to know him well, I found that he was of quite a different stamp. (很强) 当我更清楚地了解他时,才发现他完全是另一种类型的人。

It's quite an impossible/unworkable theory. (很强) 那完全是一种不现实的/行不通的理论。

She's quite a perfect angel. (很强,形容词所表属性无程度差别) 她真是个十全十美的天使。

We spent quite a long time rehearsing the play. (较强) 我们用了相当长的时间排演这出戏。

It was quite an enjoyable film. (较弱) 这部影片 比较有意思。

James is quite a good player. At least he puts his heart into it. (较弱) 詹姆士是个较好的运动员。至少说,他能专心致志。

There's quite a thousand people. (可用数词)足有上千人。

5) rather a/an+形+名: 较强

He's rather an unpractical theorist. 他是个严重脱离实际的理论家。

She's got a rather good voice, but she's rather a proud girl. 她有很好的嗓音,但她太骄傲了。

There's rather a good film on. 现在正在演一部 很好的影片。

That's rather a clever book/idea. 这真是一部写 得很好的作品/一个很美妙的主意。

That's rather a (surprising) story/ a surprising result. 这故事/这样的结果真是令人惊奇。

It was rather a hot day. 那天天气真够热的。

6) the rather + 形 + 名
a quite/rather + 形 + 名

较弱

Would you prefer the rather cold weather we've been having? 你更喜欢前些日子那种比较冷的天气吗?

I know all of them except the rather tall boy in the corner. 除了角落里那比较高的男孩子外,我都认识他们。

He's a quite/rather unpractical theorist. 他是个颇有些脱离实际的理论家。

There's a quite/rather good film on. 现在正在演一部比较好的影片。

That's a quite/rather surprising result. 这样的结果有点奇怪。

It was a rather hot day. 那天天气比较热。

This is a rather easy book, rather too easy, not suitable for you to read. (a rather...有"过于"、"不适宜"之意)

第二章 冠词的省略与重复

3.2.1-6 并列名词前省略或重复冠词

3.2.1 省略表示联合,重复表示区分

两个并列的名词前如只用一个冠词,可能是指同一事物或同一个人:

- a carriage and pair 一辆两套马拉的马车
- a bit/bite and (a) sup 少量饮食
- a journalist and writer 一个记者兼作家

A doctor and dramatist was among the guests. 客人中有一位医生兼剧作家。

She ran away to Italy with a musician or singer. 她和一个乐师或许是一个歌手私奔去意大利了。

The tramp gave us a big song and dance about having to buy a bus ticket to Chicago. 那流浪汉对我讲了一大套,说他怎么必须买张汽车票去芝加哥。

如用两个冠词,可能是指不同的事物或人:

a journalist and a writer 一位记者和一位作家

A doctor and a dramatist were among the guests. 客人中有位医生,还有一位剧作家。

To get married first and then get a job is getting the cart before the horse. 先结婚再就业好 比让 车拉马, 前后颠倒。

但只用一个冠词不一定总是指同一事物或人,紧密联系的并列名词虽指不同事物或人,前面也只用一个冠词:

- a man and woman/a gentleman and lady 一对男女
- a boy or girl 一个男孩或女孩
- an uncle or aunt 一位叔叔或姑姑
- a studious or lazy undergraduate (并列形容词) 一个 勤奋或懒惰的大学生

the king and queen 国王同王后

the house and garden 房子连同花园

A doctor and nurse were provided for them. 给他们安排了一个医生和一个护士。

I saw only the father and (the) mother. No children did I see. 我只见到了父母。一个孩子我也没看到。

The Conservatives and (the) Liberals are both opposed to the suggestion. 保守党人与自由党人都反对这一提议。

特别是指二者组成一套或密切不可分开的两种事物时,一般只用一个冠词:

a bow and arrow 弓箭 a brace and bit 手搖曲柄钻

a coat and shirt 外衣与衬衣 a coat and hat 衣服与帽子

- a cup and saucer 一副杯碟
- a knife and fork 一副刀叉
- a needle and thread 针线
- a rod and line 一根 (带钓鱼线的) 钓竿
- a short beard and moustache (嘴上下的) 短胡须
- a swinging head and parched throat 头昏脑胀,口干舌燥
 - a watch and chain 带链的怀表

the bread and butter 涂黄油的面包; 生计

the wit and beauty of the town 全城的才子佳人

但是,对于虽属紧密联系的事物,当我们要强调它们的不同性质、状态或所处的不同关系时,还要在每一个名词前重复使用冠词:

I bought a watch, and, the next day, a chain. 我买了一块怀表,第二天又买了一根表链。

A man and a woman may not agree on that. 一个男人和一个女人对此可能不会取得一致意见。

A gentleman and a lady cannot be expected to agree on this point. 在这一点上,一位先生和一位太太是不会有一致看法的。

I found a hat and a camera in the car. 我发现小汽车里有一顶帽子和一个照相机。

Do you support the Conservatives or the Socialists? 你是支持保守党人呢,还是支持社会党人呢?

并列名词前重复使用冠词,又不一定总是指不同的事物或不同的人,有时仅是强调同一事物 或 同 一 个 人 的 不 同 方面:

Within the same year, she became a wife and then a mother. 就在同一年里头,她结了婚,然后又当了母亲。

The hero of this piece unites in himself the three greatest characters upon the earth: he is a priest, a husbandman, and the father of a family. (Goldsmith) 这一作品的主人公把世界上三种最伟大的人物汇合到自己一个人身上了: 他既是牧师,又是庄稼汉,还是孩子们的父亲。

At my first visit, when I saw Marx in his study in Maitland Park Road, he appeared before me not as the untiring and incomparable socialist agitator, but as a man of learning. 当我在梅特兰公园路马克思的书房里第一次访问 他时,他出现在我面前,并不是以那不知疲倦、无与伦比的社会主义鼓动家的姿态,而是作为一位学者。

与相邻的名词并列时,名词前的同种冠词常可略去;而在与隔开较远的名词有并列关系时,名词前的冠词不能省略.

A scholar will make a better teacher than novelist. (than he'll make a novelist.) 学者当教师会比当小说家当得好。

A scholar will make a better teacher than a novelist. (than a novelist will do.) 学者当教师会比小说家当教师当得好。

3.2.2 完全把冠词略去的并列名词

上述由连词连接的并列名词,后者所带冠词常常省略,以 下由连词、介词等连接的并列名词惯用语、成语,更把冠词完 全略去:

arm in arm 臂挽臂 hand in hand 手拉手 shoulder to shoulder 肩并肩 side by side 并排 bag and baggage 连同全部财物,完全彻底

between cup and lip (某物)将得未得之际,(某事)将成未成之时

between parent and child 父母子女之间 (be hit) between wind and water 在船的水线处,在最易

受打击之处

bit by bit 一点一点地

by line and level, by rule and line 精确无误地 can't make head or tail of... 对……摸不着头脑 day after day 日复一日地 day and night 夜以继日 day by day 一天天渐渐 day in day out 连日不停, 久久不息

eye for eye 以眼还眼 face to face 面对面 father and son 父子 friend and foe 敌友

from beginning to end 自始至终

from end to end 从头到尾 end to end 头顶头,首尾相接

(比较 the beginning of the end 预示结局的最初征兆) from cover to cover (读书) 从头到尾 hand and foot 手脚一起,尽力 hand in/and glove with... 与……关系密切,狼狈为奸 horse, foot and artillery 骑兵、步兵与炮兵 house and land 连房子带地 keep body and soul together 糊口,勉强度目 live from hand to mouth 挣一点吃一点 lock, stock and barrel (原义:枪机、枪柄与枪筒)全部不剩地

man and wife 夫妻 master and pupil 师徒 (get/have) neither bit/bite nor sup 不吃不喝 neither fish, nor flesh, nor fowl/good red herring 不三不四,非驴非马

part and parcel 重要部分
pen and paper 纸笔
(all/only) skin and bone 皮包骨

sovereign and subject 君 (王) 与 (庶) 民 step by step 逐步

tooth and nail 竭尽全力

under lock and key 妥善收藏着, 严密监禁着 without rhyme or reason 毫无道理地

Like begets like. (谚语) 龙生龙,凤生凤。

Like draws to like. (谚语) 物以类聚。

Like cures like. (谚语) 以毒攻毒。

Like knows like. (谚语) 一类认得一类。(比较, 英雄 识英雄)。

比较 I've never seen the like. 我从来没听说过这种人(事)。

Like master, like man. (谚语) 有其主,必有其仆。

比较 I know a poem of a like character. 我知道一首有相似特色的诗。

3.2.3 省略冠词与并非省略的零位冠词

并列名词前略去的冠词,可能是不定冠词 a/an,也可能是定冠词 the,习惯略去,一般不再加用。但也可能并列各名词应该用零位冠词形式,其前本来就不用 a/an 或 the.

Give me (a) pencil and (a piece of) paper. 给我铅笔和纸。 I am more (a) coxcomb than (a) fool. 与其说我是个傻子,不如说我是个花花公子。

The article is meant to appear in (a) newspaper or (a) magazine. 这篇文章是要发表在报纸或杂志上的。

Against the pane was a face. Her heart pumped. It was ghastly—(a) face without (the/a) body. (Galsworthy) 贴在玻璃窗上的是一张人脸。她的心怦怦直跳。太可怕了——一张人脸,却没有身子。

(The) Boy and (the) girl came up to me. 那男孩和女孩一起来到我面前。

(The) Rider and horse fell. 骑马的连马一起摔倒了。

Edison was (the) editor, (the) printer and (the) publisher. 爱迪生兼任编辑、印刷工与发行人。

The room is (the) study, (the) bedroom and (the) sitting room all in one. 这间屋子是一室多用,兼作书房、卧室与起居室。

That's a sonata for (the) violin and (the) piano. (指某种乐器要用 the 类指名词) 这是一支提琴、钢琴奏鸣曲。

(The) Doctor. (the) nurse and (the) patient became the best of friends. 医生、护士和病人成了非常好的好朋友。

Father and mother is man and wife. (零位冠词形式,并非略去冠词) 父母之间是夫妻关系。

We are brother and sister. (零位冠词形式,"概括指",指抽象关系) 我们是兄妹。

A man may have many aspects; husband, father, friend, businessman. (husband 等四名词属零位冠词概括指形式) Depending on circumstances and on his surroundings, he behaves like a husband, (a) father, (a) friend or (a) businessman. 一个人可以有许多身份: 丈夫、父亲、朋友、商人。根据不同情况,根据他所处的环境,他表现为一个丈夫、一个父亲、一个朋友或一个商人。

3.2.4 略 the 名词单数可相当复数

略去定冠词 the 的两个以上并列的单数名词,可能属于确指,指一类事物(包括人)中确定的某个(如上节中间几个例句所示),也可能属于"the 类指",即用带 the 的单数名词指整个一类事物(或一类人)——虽因并列省略了 the,该单数 名词仍

属类指,仍指整类,包括该类事物(或该类人)的所有个体。不过,因没有 the,有时所指不一定是该类的整体、全部,而可能相当复数类指(不带冠词),指该类事物(包括人)的众多个体。

1) "略 the" 类指,以单数指整类,

I've vowed a vow never again to raise my gun against bird or beast, if I can avoid it. 我发过誓,不论是鸟类、兽类,如果我能躲过,我就决不举枪打它。(句末既用 it, bird or beast 可看作单数 the...之略,但也可看作 a...之略)

There is less difference between town and country. (town 意指 all the towns; 但 the country 为集合名词) 城乡差别缩小了。

Freeman and slave, patrician and plebeian, lord and serf, guild-master and journeyman, in a word, oppressor and oppressed, stood in constant opposition to one another. (Marx, Engels) (the oppressed 形容词前也略去冠词) 自由民和奴隶、贵族和平民、领主和农奴、行会师傅和帮工,一句话,压迫者和被压迫者,始终处于相互对立的地位。

2) "略 the" 类指, 以单数相当复数类指:

Snow lay in a feathery trim on tree and shrub. (trees and shrubs) 雪象用来装饰的羽毛,挂在大树和矮树丛上。

For three days horse and foot, canon and tumbril, drum and standard, kept pouring downward past the mill. (除 horse and foot 惯以单数形式连用指骑兵、步兵外,以下四个名词原可为复数)整整三天,骑兵、步兵、大炮、弹药车、战鼓与军旗川流不息,从磨坊旁倾泻过去。

3.2.5 略 the "类指",与留 the "类指"或复数 "类指"并用 略去 the 的单数类指名词有时与保留 the 的单数类指名词

并用,略去 the 的单数类指名词还有时与不带冠词的复数类指名词并用。在较多并列的名词中,同是类指性质,时而省略定冠词 the,时而又起用它;时而用名词单数形式,时而又转用复数——不同形式交替使用,使语句生动活泼,有更丰富的表现力量。

1) "略 the" 类指与留 the 类指并用

…the tiger and crocodile were too easily satiated and not cruel enough something more constantly, more ruthlessly, more ingeniously destructive was needed; and that something was MAN, the inventor of the rack, the stake, the gallows, the electric chair, of sword and gun and poison gas...

(B.Shaw) 猛虎与鳄鱼太容易填饱肚皮,也不够凶狠;于是就需要一种更能坚持不断地、更为残暴无情地、更加善于毁灭我们的东西;而这种东西就是"人"——他发明了拉肢台、炮烙柱、绞刑架、电椅,发明了又是刀剑、又是枪炮、又是毒瓦斯…… (the gallows 惯用复数)

2) "略 the" 类指单数与复数类指并用

He purchased palace and park, and deer, and pictures, and halls, and galleries of statue and bust, and furniture...(B. Disraeli) 他购置了有公馆、有园林、又有鹿、又有绘画、又有礼堂、又有陈列着全身与半身雕塑的展览厅、又有家具摆设…… (仅 furniture 为不可数名词)

The United States comprehends most of the physical conditions known to men: heat and cold, forest and desert tropical swamp and Arctic waste, mountains and endless plains, empty spaces and megalopolis, and the world's largest river system. 美国拥有人类已知各种自然环境中的大多数: 酷暑与严寒、森林与沙漠、热带沼泽与北极荒野、崇山峻岭与无边的平原、空旷地带与特大城市,以及世界上最大的密西

3.2.6 独立状语中的类似并列与冠词的省略

在某些比较简短的独立分词结构 (作状语) 及其他独立状语结构中,名词前常常略去冠词 (分词前后名词常形成类似并列的关系,如以下第二句中):

She advanced two more strides and waited, head half turned. 她又往前走了两大步,才半转头来等着。

Joel sat scrunched in a corner of the seat, elbow propped on window frame, chin cupped in hand, trying hard to keep awake. 乔尔蜷缩在那座位一角,胳臂肘支在窗框上,下巴托在手里,极力控制着自己不要睡着了。

I roamed about the forest, gun in hand. (独立状语结构, 有逻辑主语 gun, 但无分词) 我手提着枪, 在林间漫步。

He stood on deck, pipe in mouth. 他嘴里叼着烟斗,站在甲板上。

特别是后两句"逻辑主语+介词短语"的独立状语结构中,介词连接的二名词间有类似并列关系。再如 hand in glove 也可以说成 hand and glove (比较 hand in hand 及 from hand to mouth 等,已转为"并列"或者说"对应"关系)。不过,很多原来的独立状语结构已形成惯用语,我们已不用逗号(停顿)将其与所修饰语句分开。

The Navy and the Coast Guard work hand and glove, especially in war time. 海军与海岸防卫队密切合作,战时尤其是这样。

Fred may get a pony for Christmas because his father is making money hand over fist. 弗来德可能得到一匹马作为圣诞礼物,因为他的父亲正在大赚其钱。

All pensions should be at or above subsistence level.

Retired workers should not have to go cap in hand to ask for supplementary allowances. 各种退休金都应该超过能维持生活的水平。不应该让退休工人卑躬屈膝地去请求增发补助金。

I knew he was saying that tongue in cheek. 我知道他是假心假意这么说的。

某些原属"逻辑主语+副词"的独立状语结构也已形成惯用语,其前无逗号(停顿):

I make bold to say he can win the game hands down. 我敢说他不费吹灰之力就能取胜。

She plunged into the office head first. 她習習失失地一头冲进了办公室。

I put on my socks wrong side out. 我把袜子穿反了。

Everything was turned upside down. 一切都 给翻了个底朝天。

比较下列例句独立分词结构及其他独立状语结构中,名词带有冠词的正常情况,

The lecture (being) over, we left the hall and hurried home. 演讲结束了,我们离开礼堂,赶回家中。

He gave her the drawings, and leant back in his chair, his hands in the pockets of his coat. 他把那些图样给了她,就往椅背上一靠,双手都插在外衣口袋里。

She got up, the clothes folded over her arm. 她站起身来,衣服搭在胳臂上。

On the back of a wave the boat came riding in, the oars stretched out, their points tipping the water. 托在大浪浪尖上,那小船冲过来了,浆都向外伸去,浆尖点在水面上。

3.2.7—8 与 kind, sort 等连用的名词前有无冠词 3.2.7 a/this kind of 与 of a/this kind 等

在 "a/an/this/that(+形)+kind/sort/type of +名"的名词短语中,紧靠单数的可数名词前多不再用不定冠词 a/an (有时也用,意义见后)。在此,该单数无冠词名词为零位冠词形式,表示"概括指",并非省略了原应使用的冠词。比较下表及表后各组例句。

	指这一种	指这几种
标准正式说法	This kind of book(概括指) is useful.	These kinds of book are
也是正式说法	This kind of books (复数 类指) is…	These kinds of books are
this kind of 形容词化	This kind of books are	
口语,非正式	These kind of books are	*:
强调 kind (s)	Books of this kind are	Books of these kinds are

(以上各句中的 kind 可用 sort 替换)

This is a new type of machine. 这是一种新型机器。

This is a machine of a new type. (强调 a new type)

He is the most suitable sort of salesman. 他就是那种最合适的推销员。

He is not a salesman of the most suitable and successful sort. (强调 the...sort) 他不是那种最合适、最能卖货的推销员。

有时也见到 a malignant/an acute type of a disease (NDEC) 这种在后面名词前再加一不定冠词的说法,这是强调

所指事物具个别性,具听者未知的特殊属性("一例属于恶性/急性的病症")。如说 a disease of a malignant/an acute type则是强调 type.

无形容词的 a kind/sort/type of...所接名词,也仅在强调其具听者未知属性时,才带 a/an: He is a sort of a hero. (NDEC) (他有些象个英雄。) From the way the house sets, the tree he left, the shape and the proportion of the house, he must have been a kind of an artist. (Steinbeck) 从房屋布局看来,从他留下的树、从房子的形状和配合看来,他一定是一个艺术家之类的人物。

一般情况下 a kind/sort/type of...所接名词,无论可数或不可数,都取零位冠词形式:

It serves as a sort of touchstone. 它是一种试金石。

That's also a type of crane. 那也是一种类型的起重机。

It was with a kind of shock that we realized our mistake. 我们认识到自己的错误时,真感到一种强烈震惊。

I had a kind/sort of feeling that you would come today. 我曾有一种预感,觉得你今天要来。

I still have a kind of suspicion about it. 对于这事,我还有某种怀疑 (还有些怀疑)。

而 "(a/an+)名词+of a kind/sort" (可数名词单数带 a/an) 的短语,除也有"某种……" 之意外,还可以表示"同种的……" 与"也算一种(不大好)的……" 两种意义:

3 of a kind beats 2 of a kind in cards. (LDCE) 打牌时,同种牌三张可以胜过同种牌两张。

These goods are all of a sort. 这些货物都属于一种。

The box will make a table of a kind. 这个箱子可以算作桌子。

There's a road of a kind to the forester's hut. A jeep

could do it, but not that car you have there. 有一条勉强能过去的路通到守林人的小房。吉普能开过去,你那辆小汽车可不行。

He could speak English of a sort. 他能对付说点英语。

They served coffee of a sort. (也可以说 a sort of coffee, ALD) 他们供应一种很难喝的咖啡。

在What kind/sort of + 名词?问句中,名词前带与不带 a/an 有不同意义。带 a/an时,指个别事物,问其特殊属性(而不是问一般类别)。

(What kind of doctor is he? 他是哪科(治什么)的医生?

What kind of a doctor is he? 他这个医生医术怎么样?

「What sort of musician is he? 他是演奏什么乐器的?

What sort of a musician is he? 他这个乐师演技如何?

What sort of car is it? 是哪种 (什么牌子、哪里出的) 小汽车?

What sort of a car is it? 那小汽车怎么样 (好看、好使吗)?

What kind of holiday did you have? (camping, touring, by the seaside?). 你们假期里作了哪种活动?

What kind of a holiday did you have? (How did you enjoy it? Wood) 你们的假期过得怎么样 (好玩吗)?

3.2.8 a saint (sort) of a man 等

下列句中 of 前本来有 sort 一词,后来 sort 习惯略去,就只用 "a/an+名词+of+a/an+名词"的结构,好象是重复不定冠词的两个名词中,of 所接后者修饰前者,实际 上却是前者原跟 sort 再加 of,一起修饰后者。

He is a saint (sort) of a man. (综合英汉大辞典) 他是个

圣徒般的好人。

What sort of a man would you like for a husband? A lamb (sort) of a man? 你想找什么样的男人做你的丈夫呢? 一个羔羊般温顺的男人吗?

He has a dome of a forehead. 他的脑门子大得象个圆屋顶。

She was a jewel of an assistant. 她是个非常可贵的好助手。

You have an angel of a wife. 你有个天使般的好妻子。

I was in a devil of a hurry. 我当时急得不得了。

It's a gem of a poem. 那是一首精美如玉的好诗。

Down came another mountain of a wave. 又是一个高大如山的巨浪砸了下来。

Mary is a boy of a girl, and Henry a girl of a boy. 玛丽是个男孩子一样的女孩,而亨利是个女孩子一般的男孩。

这种结构中 of 前面的名词也可以带定冠词 the 或 物 主代词、指示代词:

We had the hell of a time in Paris. 我们在巴黎玩得很痛快。(We had a hell of a time there. 我们在那里过得很不痛快。) (Wood, English Colloquial Idioms)

He has a/the devil of a temper. 他的脾气太坏了。

Where is that fool of a servant? (ALD) 那个傻瓜仆人在什么地方呢?

Where is your scamp of a husband? 你那个小坏蛋丈夫哪儿去了?

You have never seen my darling of a Jane before, have you? (费致德《现代英语惯用法词典》) 你从来没见过我的亲爱的珍妮,是不是?

3.2.9-11 习惯上略去冠词的几种情况

3.2.9 Had ever pupil...?与 Never did baby...等

在强调 never 而用 倒 装 语 序 的 否 定句中,在使 用 ever, when 的疑问句(也属倒装、部分倒装)中,作主语的 可数 名词单数常略去原应带有的不定冠词 a/an 或定冠词 the:

Had ever pupil so patient a teacher? 何曾有一个学生有过这样耐心的教师呢? (比较 A pupil never...)

Did ever baby sit so gracefully? No, never did baby sit so gracefully. 什么时候有过一个婴儿坐得这么好看的呢? 没有,从来没有一个婴儿坐得这么好看。(比较正装: A baby never sat so gracefully.)

When did Knight of Provence avoid his foe, or forsake his love? (Lytton) 普罗旺斯的 (一名) 骑士何时曾逃避过他的仇敌,何时曾丢下过他的爱人呢?

Never was man more happy than this gentleman. 从来没有一个人象这位先生这样幸福。

Was never widow had so dear a loss. (Shakespeare) (相当现代英语 There was never a widow who suffered so dear a loss.) 从来没有一个寡妇遭受过她所受的这样重大的损失。

There was never yet boy who could endure the toothache so patiently. 还从没有过一个男孩子能够这样坚持地 忍受着牙疼之苦。

Never has (the) fallacy of "left" opportunism been so cleverly disguised. "左"倾机会主义的谬论 从来没有做过这样巧妙的伪装。

有时在主、谓并未倒置的否定句及条件从句中使用 never, ever 时, 主语也略去了冠词:

Never (a) prince was more unfortunate than Charles the

First. (英汉四用词典) 从来没有比查理一世 更不幸的君主了。

If ever (a) man was mad with excess of happiness, it was myself at that moment. 如果真的有人曾因快活得过分而发疯的话,那个人就是当时的我。

3.2.10 句子、短语开头冠词的省略

在简略的语言,包括口语和书面语中,如果不影响对语句意义的理解,句子开头的一个或几个词常被略去,特别是虚词常予省略,不定冠词 a/an 与定冠词 the 也在可略之列:

(It's a) Pity he's dead. 真可惜, 他死了。

(It's a) Pleasure to See you. 见到你, 很高兴。

(As a) Matter of fact, I doubt if a Tory government could act any differently as things stand, what ever they might wish. 事实上,由于情况如此,我怀疑,换个保守党内阁,不管他们抱什么样的希望,怕也不能采取与此不同的行动。

- (A) Quarter of an hour later, she stopped. 一刻钟后,她停下来了。
 - (I wish you a) Happy New Year! 新年好!
 - (I wish you a) Good night! (晚上告别) 再见!
 - (The) Car's giving trouble again. 汽车又出毛病了。
 - (The) Coach is ready, sir. 先生, 马车备好了。
- (The) Question is whether she is to go through choice or obedience. 问题是随她自愿去呢,还是要她服从命令前去。
- (The) Fact/Trouble is that we ourselves are in want of manpower. 事实/困难是我们本身也缺少人力。
- (The) Result is that both groups have failed. 结果是两组都失败了。

(The) Report is roughly correspondent to the actual fact. 那份报告与实际情况是大体相符的。

分句或短语开头的冠词也常省略:

You'd better keep off cigarettes altogether, or, (the) first thing you know, you'll be back to smoking forty a day again. 你最好根本不抽烟卷,不然,紧接着你就又会是每天抽40支了。

There were about fifteen kids who also came up to me. (The) Next thing I knew I got a knee in the groin. 大约 15 个小子也都来到我跟前。接着我的大腿根上就被人用膝盖顶了一下。

有时,无冠词名词词组已成为惯用语,处于句中任何位置,都可略去似应带有的冠词:

English is given first place in the secondary schools of Japan. 在日本中学里, 英语被放在最重要的地位。

Her method of dealing with the problem was to impose rigid discipline on the family and thus have time for her duties in the parish or diocese—duties which took first place. 她处理这个问题的方法是以严格的纪律约束子女,从而使她有时间执行她在教区或主教管 区的那些头等 重要的职责。

Do you suppose you could lend me a pound? (I'll) Pay you back first thing tomorrow. 您看您能借给我一个英镑吗? 明天早上我就还给您。

Just one spray and that glorious morning-fresh feeling and heavenly perfume are still there last thing at night. 您只要把这香水洒上一次,那宜人的清晨 时 轻快的 感觉和那奇妙的芬芳, 到您晚上临睡时还伴随着您。

3.2.11 标题、电报、提纲、注释等中略去冠词

在标题、电报、提纲、注释、公告、广告、商品说明、记事或日记以及非正式书信中,如果不影响对意义的理解,有的词,特别是虚词,包括不定冠词与定冠词,常被略去:

报纸标题: (A) Long time before (the) demand is met 满足要求尚需很久

(The) City Congress (is) to be in session 市议会将开幕 电报: (Your) Wife (is) ill, bring (a) doctor 妻病偕医 归

提纲: (The) Algerian crisis led to (the) downfall of (the) French government 阿尔及利亚危机使法内阁倒台

注释: In (the) 17th century (the) balance of power between (the) king and (the) nobles changed 17世纪英王与贵族间权力均势发生变化

词典释义: palm(pa:m) n. 1. (the) inner surface of (the) hand between (the) wrist and (the) fingers 手掌 (名词) 1. 腕与指之间,手的里面

商品包装的说明: Open (the) packet at (the) other end 从另一端打开包装

牌示: (A) Hospital Ahead 前有医院

记事: Take (the) car to (the/a) garage, pay (the) phone bills 送车去修理厂, 交电话费

日记: 5th. Home all (the) morning. Attended (a) lecture on (the) world outlook of (a) communist in the afternoon. 5号,整个上午在家。下午听一关于 共产党 员世界观的报告。

另外, 呼语名词一般不带冠词:

Here we are, sir. 咱们到了, 先生。

Waiter, the bill, please! 服务员,请拿帐单来吧!

I feel very ill, Doctor. 我觉得很不舒服, 大夫。 Good morning. nurse. 你好, 护士。

Go, for they call you, shepherd, from the hill. 去吧,牧羊人,他们从山上招呼你呢!

O tell her, Swallow, brief is life but love is long! 啊, 燕子,告诉她,生命虽短暂,爱情却是久常的!

但当需要特别区分出所呼唤的人时还要用定 冠词: Come along, the boy in spectacles! 戴眼镜的那孩子, 跟我来!

第三章 相仿惯用语中不同冠词 形式的不同抽象性

3.3.1 惯用语中名词的确定/不确定/概括性

我们讨论过冠词的基本用法(1.3.9)是 the...用于 确指, a/an...或无冠词复数名词用于不确指与指听者未知, 我们又讨论过从这些基本用法扩展而来的几种类指用法(1.7.1—1.7.7): the 类指、a/an 类指、复数类指——另有零位 冠词 概括指,是 更概括、更抽象的类指用法。

事实上,"the..."、"a/an..."、与零位冠词形式就是最主要、最常用的表示名词所指事物的三种形式,而无冠词复数名词的所指意义相当或者说类同于"a/an..."形式。在一般语句中是这样,在惯用语中也是如此。

确指 有时为 the 类指	不 确 指 有时为 a/an 类指、复 数 类指	概括指
the woman the pity 某种遗憾心情	a woman, women a pity 遗憾的事 (a thousand) pities 极 其遗憾	woman pity 怜悯

就"确定——不确定——概括"这三种所指来说,是名词所表示的事物,从较特殊、较具体到较一般、较抽象的过渡。在以下两组例句的某些惯用表达法中,取不同冠词形式的名词所具有的不同抽象性、概括性更为明了:

The old woman is plucking her geese. (确指)那老太婆 在拔鹅毛。(意为"下雪了", 儿语)

There's a woman in it. (不确指) 这事有女人在 捣 鬼。 (男子语)

Much of his money was squandered on wine, women and drugs. (不确指)他大部分钱财都浪费在喝酒、搞女人和吸毒上了。

Woman is the crown of creation. (概括指)妇女是天地万物中最高贵的造物。

The more is the pity! (新英汉词典)那就更遗憾了! What a pity! 多遗憾啊!

「Have/Take pity on me! 可怜可怜我吧!

以上各句中,除单独作主语的零 位冠词形式 woman 以外,取不同冠词形式单、复数的 woman, pity 各词,都是用在惯用表达法和惯用语中的。英语大量惯用表达法和惯用语有其固定搭配,有其约定俗成的特殊意义,但其中名词所取的不同冠词形式,还都反映了各该形式所具有的不同抽象性。从"确定"、"不确定"、"概括"这些角度来比较惯用表达法,特别是许多结构相仿的惯用语,能使我们更自觉地掌握与区别使用不同冠词形式的易混表达法。

3.3.2 have the/a heart 与 take heart 等

比较下列例句内,结构相似的惯用语中取不同冠词形式的 同一名词:

1) at the root (从) (特定事物的)根本, 根源:

Strike at the root of the evil. 除恶务尽。

Ignorance was at the root of a great deal of infantile mortality. 没有卫生常识是很多婴幼儿死 亡的根本原因。(比较 The love of money is the root of all evil. 爱钱是万恶之源。)

2) at root 根本上,本质上:

He was, at root, a godly and kind-hearted pedant. 他在本质上是个纯真的、好心的书呆子。

3) take/strike a ... root/roots 扎根(实际或比喻的"根"):

The cause has taken a deep root, and has spread its branches far and wide. (Dickens) 这一事业已扎下深根,它长出的枝叶已伸展到四面八方。

That provided a good soil for love to strike/take roots in. 这就为爱情的扎根提供了良好的土壤。

4) take/strike root 扎根,确实起作用、被接受:

You seem to have given them good advice. I only hope your words of wisdom will take/strike root. 看来你已给他们提出很好的意见。我只希望你的明智谈话确有效果。

各句中从 the root 到 a... root/roots, 特别是到零 位冠词形式 (at) root, (take) root, 是从十分具体的个别事物 (即使是用于比喻), 到相当抽象的、概括的概念。

再比较以下三组例句各惯用语中取不同冠词形式的 light, heart 二名词,各组中惯用语多由同一动词或介词与同一名词构成。

see the light: A new book by the author is to see the light (of day) this autumn. 作者另一新书将于今秋问世。

{ see in a ... light: They see things in a different light.

他们从另一种角度来问题。

see light: Now I begin to see light on this matter. 现在我才开始对这事有所领会。

(in the light of: A Royal request is invariably considered by the recipient in the light of a command. (NDEC) 国王的请求必然被对方看作是命令。

in a... light: At first he had appeared in the light of a greenhorn, and now they made him appear in a new/good light. 起初,他被人们看作是生手,而现在,他们却使他取得了新的/更有利的地位。

in light/view of (也说 in the light of): In light of bad weather report, we should leave early. 鉴于预报的恶劣天气,我们应该及早出发。

(have the heart: With such a forlorn look I had not the heart to prosecute my inquiries. 情况看来是这样令人悲观,我已没有勇气一直询问下去了。

have a heart: He didn't know if the teacher would have a heart and pass him. 他不知道老师会不会发发善心,让他及格。

take heart; take to heart: You needn't take it to heart.
You must take heart and go on to win the battle.
你不必为这事耿耿于怀。你必须振奋精神,继续战斗,夺取胜利。

惯用语中名词所取冠词形式、单复数形式等皆属固定搭配,很少有表示同一意义而能互相替换的不同形式的搭配。作"以……形式出现"解的 in the light of 不能换作 in light of; 仅作"鉴于"解的 in the light of 在非正式说法中可以换作 in light of (同义的 in view of 却大不同于 in the view of, 见 3.4.3)。又如 I was then at the crossroads. 虽与 ... at a

crossroads. 通用,但是 at the crossroads 可能指 特 定的"抉择", take roots 虽与 take root 意义相仿,但 take roots 是 具体的根或形象的比喻,而 take root 却是惯用的笼统说法。

3.3.3 take the/a...part... 与 take part... 等

在惯用语中,不但表示具体事物的名词取不同冠词形式时具有不同的抽象性、概括性,就是抽象名词取不同冠词形式时,也具有不同的抽象性、概括性。例如下列例 句中的 (act/play) the part,确定的 "角色"、"作用", (play/take) a/an ... part,听者未知的一种 "角色"、"作用"; (take) part (in/with)笼统的 "部分"、"方面":

He acted/played the part of a clown. 他演的是小丑的角色。

Don't make light of the part woman now plays in our commercial life. 不要轻视 妇女现在 在贸易 活动中所起的作用。

He didn't forget to mention some of the foreigners who had played a part in the country's history. 他没有忘记提到在他们国家历史上起过作用的一些外国人。

He played/took a leading part in the movement. (NDEC) 他在这一运动中起着领导作用。

He too, took part in the movement. 他也参加了这一运动。

不过, take the part of somebody = take part with somebody (站在某人方面), 以确指名词构成的一个 惯用 语, 偶尔相当以概括指名词构成的另一惯用语:

You're a brave boy to take the part of a little fellow. Thanks for taking part with him. 你站在一个小人物一边,真是个勇敢的孩子。感谢你支持他(站在他这边)。

3.3.4 用一、二种冠词形式构成惯用语的名词

大量惯用语各有固定的搭配形式,各有约定俗成的特殊意义,例如,下面这些以名词line构成的介词短语是惯用语:

用确指名词	用不确指名词	用概括指名词
down the line 完全地、全力地		by line (and level) (或by rule and line) 精细地,准
in the line 精于 此道,内行	in a line 排成一行	in line 成横排;协调,守规矩
on the line (挂画) 与眼同高,处于显 赫地位,居两可之 间,处于危险境地	on a line 在同一 水平面上	out of line 不协调 (例句见 3.7.3)

除此以外的"介词(+冠词)+line"形式短语,就可能不是惯用语,不是固定搭配,没有约定俗成的特殊意义。如 down a line 的意义由各词意义凑到一起来表明:"沿着""一条路线";人们不用介词 down 或 on 加于零位冠词形式的 line 构成介词短语(至于 downline, 那已是一个词:形容词"沿线的",或副词"沿线")。

远远不是所有的名词都有以"the …", "a/an …"及"零位冠词形式"这三种所指形式构成的惯用语。很多名词只以其中一种或两种形式构成惯用语。例如下面作为例子的两组名词,前一组仅常见其以相同、相近动词或介词加于"the …"与"零位冠词形式"构成的一些惯用语;后一组则仅常见其以相同、相近动词或介词加于"a/an…"与"零位冠词形式"构成的某些惯用语。

1) 未见以"相同(近)动词/介词 + a/an + 该名词"构成惯用语:

take the place (of) 代替 take place 发生 at the service of 供……使 on service 服现役 (较短时

用、差遣

in the service 服役; 在军队 中

in the charge of 由某人掌 管

in the person of 代表,体 现于

in the possession of (被动 占有)由某人占有

on the telephone 在打电话

期)

in service (物) 被使用, (人)当仆人,(军人)服役 期间

in charge of 掌管 某事 (某物); 由某人掌管

in person 亲自, 身体上, 外表上

in possession of (主动占 有)占有某物

by telephone 用电话

(各惯用语例句见 3.3.5)

2) 未见以"相同(近)动词/介词 + the + 该名词"构成惯用语:

be a long cry 很远,差别 很大

go for/on a holidy 去度假

have (a) holiday 放假,休 假

take (a) holiday 休假
have/take an interest in
对……感兴趣

have an interest for 使某人 感兴趣

keep a shop 经营一家商店 in a ferment 骚乱中 of an age 同样年龄 be within cry 很近(可听到 喊声)

be/go on holiday 在休假/ 去度假

keep holiday 放假、休假

make holiday 休假
have interest with 对某人
有影响

be of interest to 对某人 来说是有趣的 keep/tend shop 照管营业

in ferment 酝酿中 of age 战年

(各惯用语例句见 3.3,6)

3.3.5 in the place, in place (in a place 非惯用语)

下面各组例句中的同一名词(即3.3.4 节 1)所列例词以相同或同义的动词、介词加于 "the ..." 与零位冠词形式构成惯用语。比较:各组例句中以其 "a/an ..." 形式构成 的短语为活动搭配。惯用语有固定的意义,常常不能"望文生义",靠各单词词义的凑合往往误解或不可解;而活动调配的短语只是表示各该词凑成的意义,一般都能"望文生义":

The new takes the place of the old. 新的总要代替旧的。

Cotton is being used less and less. Nylon has taken the/its place. 棉花用得越来越少。尼龙已取而代之。

Events happen by accident, but take place by arrangement. 事情的发生是偶然的,而举行则是经过安排的。 She took a place as a saleswoman. (非惯用语)她承担了售货员的职位。

He was elected president of the society in (the) place of Mr Brown. 他被选为协会主席以代替布朗先生。
Your suggestion is quite in place. 你的建议很恰当。

His conduct was quite out of place. 他的行为很不恰

Keep it in a damp/safe place. (非惯用语) 把它放在潮湿/安全的地方。

当。

There good hotels are at the service of the visitors. 那里有很好的旅馆接待宾客。

He was disabled when on service in South Africa. 他 在南非服役时受伤致残。

He was in the service successively of Francis I and Henry II. 他连续在弗朗西斯一世与亨利二世的军队

中服役。

Her eldest daughter was in service, and the other two worked in a shop. (Wood) 她的大女儿在当女仆,另外两个女儿在一家商店工作。

There are buses over twenty years old which are still in service. 有的公共汽车用了 20 多年,还在使用。

He died in service. 他是在服役期间死去的。

She has rendered me a (great) service before. (非惯用语)以前她给我帮过(很大的)忙。

The baby was left in the charge of a neighbour. (Wood) 婴儿留给一位邻居照管。

The money was given in charge of Mr. Jackson for safe-keeping. (或 in the charge of, A Dictionary of American Idioms) 钱交给杰克逊先生妥为保管。

{ I was left in charge of the baby. 我被留下照看婴儿。

He was placed in charge of the books. 他被安排管理 那些书籍。

He is wanted on a charge of larceny. (非惯用语)他被 控告犯偷窃罪,被官方缉拿。

America has produced a great inventor in the person of Mr. Edison. 美国产生了爱迪生先生这样一位伟大发明家。

I spoke in the person of Daily News. 我代表《每日新闻》发了言。

In person he was handsome, strong and healthy. 他面 貌英俊, 身体强壮。

She looks younger in person than on the screen. 她本 人看着比在银幕上年轻。

I never had the pleasure of meeting him in person. 我

从来没得亲身见到他。

Don't put the sacred faith of man in man in a person like that. (非惯用语) 人对人总是抱着神圣的信任之心, 但对他这样一个人却不可信任。

That farm has been in the occupation/possession of the same family for over a hundred years. (Wood) 一百多年来那个农庄一直归同一家族占有/所有。

The house was finished some months ago, but the owner is not yet in occupation. No one is yet in occupation of the house. (ibid) 房子几个月前已经完工,但房主还没占用。这房现在还没人占用。(比较 He is now in/has come into possession of the property. 他现在掌握着/已开始掌握这笔财产。)

He engages in an out-of-door occupation — gardening.

(非惯用语)他从事一种户外职业——园艺。

You are wanted on the telephone. 有人打电话找你。
I've informed him of the matter by telephone. 我已用电话把这事告诉他了。

He has instructed his stockbroker through a telephone newly installed in the office. (非惯用语) 他已用办事处新安装的一部电话对他的经纪人作了指示。

3.3.6 of an age, of age (of the age 非惯用语)

再往下各组例句中的同一名词(即3.3.4节2)所举例词),以相同或同义的动词、介词加于"a/an..."与零位冠词形式构成惯用语。而各组例句中以其"the..."形式构成的短语为活动搭配:

The state of affairs in industry is a long/far cry from what it was last year. (LDCE) 工业方面情况与去年大不相同。

The policeman was out of/within cry. 那警察离得很远/很近。

Don't follow in the cry. (非惯用语)不要盲目追随,人 云亦云。

The whole family was out for a holiday. 全家都外出度假去了。

They were away on holiday. 他们度假走了。

He's having/taking a holiday in the country. 他们正在 乡间休假。

The whole city kept holiday. (NDEC) 全城都放假了。
Let's make holiday for a day or two. (ibid) 咱们歇一
两天假吧!

He had/took/showed an interest in the subject. 他对这个题目很感兴趣。

The subject had an (abiding) interest for him. 这个题目使他感到(经久不断的)兴趣。

But it may be of (little/much) interest to his wife. 但是对于他的妻子说来,那可能是有趣(没意思/很有意思)的。

Only you have interest with the governor. Please make/use your interest with the governor for the poor woman. 只有您对总督能有影响。请您 在总督 面前给这可怜的女人讲讲情吧!

They had the interest of their country at heart. (非惯用语) 他们心里想着祖国的利益。

「A shopkeeper keeps a shop. 小店主经营(一家)店铺。

He was keeping/tending shop. 他在照管营业。

He smells of the shop. (the shop, 属 the 类指) 他颇有商人气 (转义: 颇有专精一行的 神气)。(参见英华大词典)

The country was in a ferment/in a state of ferment.

当时全国都处在动乱之中。

The ideas were in ferment in the mind of the auto workers. 汽车工人思想中正在酝酿着这些念头。

Be sure not to get involved in the (present social) ferment. (非惯用语) 一定不要卷进(当前社会)这场骚乱中去。

The two are just of an age. 两个人正好同岁。

You are of an age to know better. 你已经到了应该更懂事的年龄了。

He is of age today. (Wilde) 今天他满21岁。(在英国, 法律规定21岁成年)

In four years' time I shall come of age. 过4年我将成年。

They were well-known personages of the age of chivalry. (非惯用语) 他们都是骑士道时代的著名人物。

第四章 仅由不同冠词区别的结构 相仿的惯用语示例

3.4.1 以一冠词相区别:理据与习惯 在有名词构成的惯用语中,名词的冠词形式是个特别有趣 的问题。虽然惯用语首先都是表示约定俗成的特殊意义,但在所含名词意义中也反映着不同冠词形式"确指"、"不确指"、"概括指"等所指意义。貌似简单的冠词形式在这当中起着极其微妙而有时十分重大的作用。特别是在大量结构相仿的惯用语中,常常是动词、介词、名词等全都相同或相近,仅以一小小冠词之差,使各惯用语的意义大不相同。例如:

in the body—在体内,在(信件等)正文中,活着:whether in the body or out of it (NDEC) 无论活着或死后 in a body—全体—致地 (比较 to a man)

in body—亲自 (比较 in person, personally); 身体方面…… (健康与否等, 如 strong in body/person: 例句见3.5.1)

又如,在下列各句中, the front, the back 指确定的处所,而作为惯用语 in front/back of 里面取零 位冠 词形 式的 front 与 back 则笼统地指相对位置,指方向,或用于比喻:

The writer's picture is in the front of the book. 书的前面有作家的照片。

Three people can sit in the back of this car. 三个人可以坐在这辆小汽车后边。

Our car was in front/back of theirs. 我们的小汽车在他们的小汽车前面/后面。

Get in back of your team by cheering them at the game. (DAI) 要支持你们的球队,比赛时对他们喝采、喊加油。

冠词不同而意义相同的惯用语,象on the average/on an average/on average (ODCIE,"平均"),是非常稀少的。with the view of 与 with a view to 都接动名词时,同样表示"抱着……的目的",但 with a view to 接名词时另有"着眼于"、"考虑到"、"鉴于"之意。(例句见 3.7.7)

in a temper ("在发脾气", 用作表语),与in temper ("在

发脾气时",用作状语)的意义实际相同,而 所 担任成 分不同 (Wood)。out of temper "忍不住发起脾气(时)" 可作表语、补语、状语。

He is in a temper. 表语 (全句意思是 He is in a bad temper/humour. 其反面是 He is in a good temper/humour. 他现在心情很好。)

He did it in temper. 状语 (不说 did it in bad temper)

I never saw him out of temper. (NDEC) 宾语补语

The little girl broke the vase out of temper. (小西友七) 小女孩发着脾气把花瓶摔了。(句中 out of temper 为状语)

绝大多数结构相仿的惯用语,例如以相同或相 近的 动词、 介词、名词等构成的惯用语,都因冠词形式 的 不同而意义各 异,其中多可从冠词形式的不同所指看出惯用语意义差别的理 据,但是,也有时难以追 究冠词形式 与惯用语特殊意义的关 系。我们一般以实用为目的: 如有某种明 显联系能帮助记忆、 运用,就可以利用; 如联系不明,当然不必追问,尽可以只把 该冠词形式看作是惯用语特殊意义的标志,注意区别其与结构 相似的惯用语中的冠词形式。

如惯用语 on end 有两种意义。一种意义是 (resting/standing) on the end (Wood) "竖立";另一意义是 without intermission "连续不断地"。 on end 中 end 用零 位冠 词形式,可只注意它不同于 at the end 及 at an end 中的冠词形式。

又如 have a time 意思是 have a hard time; 而 have one-self a time 意思是 have a good time (DAI)——前者"吃了苦头",后者"玩得很好",可注意二者不同于 have time to turn round ("能抽出时间")及 have the time ("有时间", "有钟、表")中的冠词形式。

John had a time passing his math course. 约翰下了一番苦功才把数学考试考及格了。

Bob had himself a time going to every night club in town. 包勃到市里各处夜总会去跳舞, 玩得很痛快。

I wrote as soon as I had time to turn round after the mass of work. 那么多工作刚做完,我一得空就写了这封信。

Ask inside, they're bound to have the time. 到里边去问,他们一定有钟表。

而 have the hell of a time 通常 表示 过得 很快活; have a hell of a time 则表示过得很苦恼 (Wood, English Colloquial Idioms)。其中的 the 与 a 为什么通常有这样意义上的差别,可不必深究,只当是习惯用法。

下面六节举例比较若干以相同或相近动词、介词、名词等构成的惯用语,各组惯用语仅由不同冠词形式来相互区别。

3.4.2 由同一动词与同一名词构成的惯用语

相同动词 + the/a/an/零 (零位冠词形式) + 相同名词

用 the
be brought to the
bed (非惯用语)
被带到床前
be on the drink
经常喝酒,嗜酒
成瓣
die in the last ditch
奋战而死

give the battle 认输 输go to the sea 到 海滨去 用 a/an

die in a ditch 死于沟壑,潦倒 而死 用零位冠词形式 be brought to bed (孕妇)临产(例句 见3.5.1) be in drink 喝醉 了

give/offer battle 挑战(例句见 3.7.1) go to sea 当水手; 出航 have the name of have a name for 有……的名声 因……而著名 keep the house 呆 keep a house (非 keep house 管理家 惯用语) 照看房 在家里不出去 务 屋 show a leg 起床 show leg 逃跑 take a fancy to take the fancy of 使……喜爱,吸引 喜爱 take the place 代 take a place (非 take place 举行. 蓉 惯用语)任职 发生 toss about the bed toss in bed 辗转 床上 辗转床上

3.4.3 由同一介词与同一名词构成的惯用语

相同介词 + the/a/an/零 + 相同名词

用 the 用 a/an 用零位冠词形式 at the sight of at sight 见(票、人、 乐谱等)即…… 见……就 (付款、开枪、演 奏等)(例句见 3.7.6by the sea 在海边 by a sea of (非 by sea 经海路 惯用语)被许许 by the way,... 说 by way of 经由 多多……(包围 起来, …… 等) for a time 一段 for the time being 暂时 时间 in case (of) 假如,以 in the case of 就 ……来说 免(例句见3.7.1)

in the fashion of 按……的样式 in the flesh 活着; 亲身

in the matter of 在……的问题上

in the office (非 惯用语)在办事处,在办公室 in the same manner 以同样方式 in the secret 知道 内情 in the view of (非 惯用语) 在 ……的看法中 in the way 挡道,碍事

on the Sunday (非 惯用语)在那个星 期日 to the point 中 肯, 扼要

to the tune of 数量多达,价钱高达

in a fashion 多 少,勉强

in a matter of 在 大约……(多长 时间等)内 in an office 在 一办事处任职

in a similar manner 以同样方式 (pry) into a secret (非惯用语)(刺 探) 秘密

in a way 从某方面看来,在某种程上 in a word 总 (on a Sunday (中星期日 to a point 到到句 是是我们的(可见 3.7.5)

to another tune 改弦易辙 in fashion 时髦

in flesh 肥胖的

in office 执政(例 句见3.7.4)

in like manner 以 同样方式 in secret 秘密地

in word 口头上 on Sunday 在星期 日

.4.4 由同一动词与不同名词构成的惯用语 相同动词 + the/a/an/零 + 相近名词

用零位冠词形式 用 a/an (或无冠词 用 the 复数) catch sight of 突 catch a glance of (catch a glimpse 然看见,发现 of) 瞥见 give way to/make give the road to 给……让路 way for 让路给 ……,屈服于…… /让路给…… go to the dogs go to pot 衰败,遭 衰败, 毁灭 到毁灭 kill the evening kill a couple of kill time 消磨时 (非惯用语)消磨 hours (非惯用 间 语)消磨几个小 晚上的时间 时 raise hell 大吵大 raise the devil/roof raise a dust/fuss 大闹一通(例句 大吵大闹 闹 见 3.6.2) be seeing things see the sights 参 (复数)看到幻象 观名胜 show leg show clean cloven a 逃跑 show the pair of heels foot (魔鬼)露爪 趾,露马脚 逃跑 strike the colours strike a/the tent strike camp 拔营, 开拔 (非惯用语)拆掉 降旗投降 帐篷

strike the hours strike a bed/lead strike oil 找到石 (时钟)打点 take the air 出外 take a turn/take take air (事被)传 转转,吸点新鲜 空气 take the part/side take sides with take part with 站 of 站在……一边

找到矿床/矿脉 turns 转一圈, 转变/轮流 (复数)站在……

油, 忽获巨利 扬开来

在……一边(例句 见 3.3.3)

3.4.5 由同一介词与不同名词构成的惯用语

相同介词+the/a/an/零+相近名词

用 the at the/a crossroads at a loss 困惑。 面临 抉择,徘徊 歧途

at the first meeting | at a glance —眼 | at first sight —见 一见,初次会面

at the present day 现在,目前 in the ear (谷物) 在抽穗

in the end 最后

in the event of 如 果发生 in the event 结果;

用 a/an 不知所措

("一眼看穿"等)

用零位冠词形式 (all) at sea 茫然, 迷惑,不知所措

("一见钟情"等) (例句见3.7.4) at present 现在, 目前

in bud/flower 在 发芽。在吐蕾/在 开花

in time (at last/ length) 最后,终 于

in case of 如果发 生(例句见3.7.1)

(美国英语)如果 ((接从句)		
in the/a family	in a delicate/an	in/with calf (母
way 怀孕	interesting con-	牛)怀孕
	dition 怀孕	
	in a hurry 匆忙	in haste 匆忙中
	中	
in the past 在过去	in days of old	•
THE Past TEXES	(无冠词复数)从	
	前	in like manner 以
in the same way	in a like fashion	
以同样方式	以同样方式	同样方式
in the soup 在困	in a dilemma/stew	in deep/hot water
境中	进退两难/在困	在困境中(例句见
	境中	3.6.2)
under the weather	under a cloud 失	
有点不 舒 服(小	宠,涉嫌,有心	
病)	事	
7/4 /	within a stone's	in arm's reach 伸
	throw 不远,扔	手够得到之处
	石头可到之处	
(go) with the crowd		with child 怀孕
随大流	}	

3.4.6 由不同动词与同一名词构成的惯用语

相近动词 + the/a/an/零 + 相同名词

用 the

用 a/an

get off the ground 飞起,顺利进行 用零位冠词形式 gain ground 进展, 普及

get the axe

get the point 抓 住要点

see the point 理 解要点

get the cold shoulder 遭受冷遇

give ... the time of one's life 使某 人过得非常快活 have the surprise of one's life 大 吃一惊 keep to the point 扣住主题 pass (the) time (比 · 较 kill time) 度 过时间,消磨时间

pass (give) the time of day with (to) 和……打招呼(说 "早晨好""晚上 好"等)

被解雇 | have an axe to grind 另有企图 make a point of 必定要, 坚持要 (例句 见3.7.5) stretch a point 超出范围,破例 让步 rub shoulders with (复数)与……摩 肩接踵,与…… 颇有来往

lead ... a life 使 某人经常不得安 宁 lead ... a dog's life

使某人过着困苦 的日子 stand on points

(复数)拘泥细节 have a high old time (make a time of it) 玩

得非常痛快

have a/the whale of a time 玩 得非常痛快

bring/come to life 使苏醒/苏醒

see life 见世面

make time 抽空; 准时 到 达,顺利 进行

take time $(\neq take)$ one's time) 花 费时间(≠可从 容不迫)(例句见 3.7.7

perish the thought	not givea thou-	take thought 担
死了这颗心吧	ght 对 毫	心,挂念
run into the ground	不在意	touch ground 触
把做过头,		及实质问题
把弄糟		
stay the course 坚	steer/follow a	change course 改
持到底	middle course	变方向,改变方针
!	采取稳健方针	

3.4.7 由不同介词与同一名词构成的惯用语

相近介词 + the/a/an/零 + 相同名词

用 the	用 a/an	用零位冠词形式
at the end (of) 在	at an end 即将	on end 竖直立着;
(某段时间、场所)	结束	连续地
末、尽头		
in the end 最后	(come) to an end	without end 无穷
	结束	无尽 (例 句见
	·	3.7.2)
at the point of 将	to a point 到一	in point 中肯的
近	定程度	
on the point of 即	into a point (非	in point of (fact)
将,正要	惯用语) 到末尾	就而言(如"就事实而言",
	成为尖的	"事实上")
to the/a point of	up to a point 到	
到的程度	一定程度, 在某	
	种程度上	
at the time 当时	at a time 每次	on time 准时
at the same time	at times (复数)	in time 及时
同时,然而	有时,不时	}

in the same time	at one time (用 [up to time 准时
用同样长的时间	数词)同时,从	
,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,	前有个时期	
all the time (不	at all times (复	of all time 自古
用介词)始终,一	数) 无论何时	以来的
直		
behind the times/		before time/day
day 落后于时代		提前/天亮前
by the day (非惯	of a day 短命的	by day 在白天
用语)按天计算		•
during the day/ni-	of a night 常在	at night 夜间
ght 在白天/夜	夜间;在一个	
晚	夜晚 (例句见	
(stay) for the night	3.7.4)	by night 在夜间
过夜		
for /in the future	for/in days to	in future 今后
在将来	come (复数)	
	在将来	
for the present 目		at present 现在
前,暂时		
for the time being	for a time 一段	
目前,暂时	时间	
in the care of	without a care	in care of 由
由照管	无忧无虑	转交(例句见
		3.7.1)
	in (a) temper 生	
•	气的; 生气地	不住发了脾气
in the night (in the	in a night 一夜	under night 乘黑
dead of night)		夜, 秘密地

	6
	towards night 傍
	晚
with a past 有过	
一番经历	
	in domestic service
	at 在某人家里
	当仆人
to a turn (烹调)	in turn 依次
恰到好处	
take it in turns	
(take turns with)	
(复数) 轮换	
by turns (复数)	out of turn 不依
轮换,交替	顺序,不合时宜
	(例句见3.7.7)
	in (the) face of 面
	对,即使
in a way (in one	under way (船)行
	驶中, (事情) 进
	行中
	out of/beyond qu-
	estion 毫无疑问
	(例句见3.7.5)
	in full 详尽,全
	部
4 4 .1 /	
」 与)差一与身,	1 1
	一番经历 to a turn (烹调) 恰到好处 take it in turns (take turns with) (复数)轮换

(赛船)差一船身 步,甚至 to the life 逼直 for (dear) life 排 命(逃)(例句见 3.7.3under (the) comin command of 指 mand of 由某人 挥着 指挥 with a pen 用一 in pen 用钢笔(写) 只钢笔 with the view of with a view to 抱着……的目的 鉴于,考虑到; 抱着……的目的

3.4.8 因转作另类名词而改变抽象程度

象在一般语句中一样,惯用语中的各类名词(个体名词、集合名词、物质名词、抽象名词),有时从其中一类转用于指另外一类。因为这些名词类别各具有不同的概括化、抽象化程度,同形名词用于指不同种类的事物时,就取不同的冠词形式(参见1.4.3):

1) 概括化、抽象化程度的提高

可数名调用 a/an/the/ 复数形式	特作不可數名词 用零位冠词形式		计词形式
个体名词→	集合名词	物质名词	抽象名词
trim the sails 因风使 帆,见机行事	set/make sail 启航		
give somebody a stone for bread 哄骗		a heart of stone 铁石心肠	
tip the balance 使天 平斜向一边,决定结局			strike balance 取得平衡,结帐 (例句见3.7.1)

2) 从概括、抽象转指个别、具体

不可數名	词用零位冠词形	式/the	转作可数名词 复数形式	用 a/an/the/
抽象名词	物质名词	集合名词	个体名词	可数集合名词
render first aid 给予急 数			a hearing aid 助听器	
	on paper 理 论上,名义上 You can't wrap fire in paper. 纸里 包不住火。 set pen to paper 动笔		He's on a paper (NDE-C) 他是一 报社的记者。 in the paper 报纸上 set a paper 出一份考卷	
		people of all walks 各界人士 of the people, by the people, for the people, for the people 民有、民治、民事(例 句见 3.6.1)		as a people 作为一个民 族 all the peo- ples of the earth 世界 各民族

又如以下惯用语中,左右分别为个体、抽象名词:
hang/be in the balance 安危 on balance 总的说来
(成败) 未定

hold the balance 举足轻重 off/out of balance 失去平衡 (参见3.7.1, balance 条)

air 原为物质名词,取零位冠词形式或加 the;转作抽象名词可加 a/an 指"一种……神气",还可取复数形式:

give air to something 发表 | give an air of (reality 等) give somebody the air 解雇 put something on the air 传 | give oneself airs 摆架子 播

作出(实有其事……)的样 子 put on airs 摆架子 (六惯用 语参见3.6.2)

本章仅分析、比较了各种相仿惯用语中名词所取的不同冠 词形式,以各类名词构成的相仿惯用语在句中的用例见以下各 章。

第五章 "the/a/an/零+个体名词" 惯用语

3.5.1 the/a/an/零 + arm/.../bud

以下各组例句中,各句所示惯用语或非惯用短语中的名词 依次为, 带 the 名词, 确指或类指, 带 a/an (或无冠词复数) 名词,不确指、类指或指听者未知,零位冠词形式,概括指。

试根据这几种所指,考虑各句汉译,再参看各组例句后的 汉语注释 (仅注用斜体字印出的惯用语或相仿短语的意义)。

arm:

- 1) The reduction of taxation will be a much needed shot in the arm for industry. (Wood, English Prepositional Idioms) (強燥燥距)
- 2) She has been one of our frequent guests ever since I was a baby in arms. (怀抱的)
 - 3) All the books were in arm's length. (伸手可得)
- 4) He always kept me at arm's length. (与……保持一定 距离)

ball:

- 1) Just now, you have the ball at your feet. (机会就在你面前)
 - 2) We had a ball exploring the town. (玩得很痛快)
 - 3) The management refused to play ball. (合作) bed:
- 1) Go to the bed and see if Baby has wetted it. (到床 前去看看)
- 2) Now you have to lie in/on the bed you've made. (自作自受)
- 3) I felt as if lying on a bed of thorns/nails. (如坐针毡)
 - 4) She was brought to bed of a boy. (临产) board:
- 1) The proposal is on the board. (在会议桌上,指将被讨论)
 - 2) He's on the board, (为一委员)
 - 3) She's on the boards. (在舞台上,指是演员)
 - 4) He fixed it on a switch board. (在配电盘上)
 - 5) He's on board (the ship/train/aircraft). (船/车/飞机上)
- 6) It's best to be above board in everything. (把事情摆在桌面上,光明正大)

boat:

- 1) He put off asking her and missed the boat. (坐失良机)
 - 2) We rushed out and took to the boats. (乘救生艇)
 - 3) He took a boat, continuing his journey. (乘船)
 - 4) He took boat/ship at Wuhan for Shanghai. (上船) body;

- 1) The important news comes in the body of the letter. (在信的正文中)
 - 2) The staff resigned in a body. (全体一致)
- 3) Though absent in body, I'm with you in spirit, 亲身("不能亲身到场")

book:

- 1) He pretended to be speaking by the book. (确有根据)
 - 2) He spoke like a book. (皎文嚼字地)
 - 3) I can read him like a book. (对……了如指掌)
 - 4) He's an open book. (十分率真)
- 5) He's ready to assert anything without book. (毫无根据地)

bud:

- 1) The plot was nipped in the bud. (消灭于萌芽状态)
- 2) Trees were putting out buds. (发芽)
- 3) Roses were in bud. (含苞欲放)
- 3.5.2 the/a/an/零 + card/.../cup

比较各惯用、非惯用短语 中 的 the..., a/an... (或无冠词 复数) 和零位冠词形式:

Card:

- 1) It's in/on the cards. (可以预期的)
- 2) He has the cards in his hands. (有成功的把握)
- 3) He has a card up/in his sleeve. (有秘密的策略)
- 4) He's a knowing card. (精明鬼)
- 5) Admission by card. 凭招待券入场 chain:
- 1) A good football player can take it on the chin when

him team loses. (忍受失败)

- 2) If chins/jaws/tongues must wag, let them. (人们要议论)
 - 3) He's chin deep (up to the chin) in debt. (深陷) church
- 1) He intended to leave the bar for the church. (不当律师了, 去做牧师)
- 2) There was much gossip among them between churches. (在各次做礼拜之间)
- 3) They're in/at church (不同于 in the church). (在數礼拜)

cloud:

- 1) She has lost herself in the clouds. (沉溺在空想中)
- 2) She was under a cloud because of dishonesty. (遭到不信任)
- 3) She stole out under (the) cloud of night. (在……的拖蔽下)

cock:

- 1) He'll not be allowed to set (the) cock on (the) hoop. (恣意放荡)
 - 2) I noticed a knowing cock of the eye. (会意的眼神)
 - 3) You do talk cock/rot. (胡说八道)
- 4) He was going away, but I told him not to go off at half cock. (仓促行事)
 - 5) The tap was turned on full cock. (水龙头开到最大) cover:
- 1) But they did it under the cover of altruism and democracy. (在……的掩蔽下)
 - 2) Only the last letter was sent under a separate cover.

(用另外一个信封)

3) We stormed the fort under cover of tremendous fire from the enemy. 在……下,冒着

cup:

- 1) I was mistaken in supposing that I had drained the cup of sorrow to the dregs. (或 drain the cup of pleasure to the dregs)
 - 2) They've had a bitter cup to drink.
- 3) There is many a slip betwixt (the) cup and (the) lip. (谚语)
- 1) 尝尽 (痛苦), 享尽 (欢乐) 2) 遭遇艰辛 3) 杯将到口, 常会失手。

3.5.3 the/a/an/ \mathbf{z} + dog/.../foot

比较各惯用、非惯用短语中的 the..., a/an...(或不带冠词的复数形式)和零位冠词形式:

dog:

- 1) Let the dog see the rabbit. (谚语) (不要挡别人视线)
- 2) Let sleeping dogs lie (Wake not a sleeping dog). (谚语) (不要惹事生非)
 - 3) He needn't put on (the) dog like that. (摆架子) door:
- 1) He closed the door to any more arguments. (断然拒绝)
 - 2) They met behind closed doors. (秘密地)
 - 3) It's next door to impossible. (简直是) ear:
- 1) He always gives the ready ear to wise counsel. (乐于听取)

- 2) More than once has a scandalous story set friends by the ears. (使……打起架来)
- 3) He answered not by word but by blow, giving him d thick ear. (把……的耳朵打肿)
- 4) One cannot make a silk purse out of a sow's ear. (谚语)(破烂材料难成器)
- 5) You must give (an) ear (lend an ear) to her prudent advice. (傾听)
- 6) The spy will play it by ear following no fixed plan.
 (随机应变)

face:

- 1) How can you have the face to come back? (有何脸面)
- 2) Don't make faces at me and make eyes at her. (做鬼脸)
- 3) Don't try to save face by way of invented excuses. 保全面子

flower:

- 1) He died in the flower and promise of youth. (正当大好年华)
- 2) He gave only a brief account without flowers of description. (不加修饰地)
 - 3) The rice was then in (full) flower. 开花(盛开繁花) fool:
- 1) If wise men play the fool, they do it with a venge-ance. (装傻)
- 2) He made a fool of me/himself. (愚弄(别人)/(自己)做蠢事)
 - 3) The fellow is enough of a fool to do anything. (傻

到某种程度)

4) He's fool enough to break the news to anybody. (傻 到某种程度)

foot:

- 1) On Christmas Eve the children hang their stockings at the foot of the bed. (挂在床上脚底下那头)
- . 2) His empire was also a colossus with feet of clay. (泥足巨人)
- . 3) She was able to have him under foot. (压制)
 - 4) They've never set foot on French soil. (踏上)
- 5) A new scheme has been set on foot. (使某事开始实行)
 - 6) Schemes are on foot. (在进行中)

3.5.4 the/a/an/ \mathbf{z} + hand/.../lump

比较各惯用、非惯用短语中的 the..., a/an ... (或不带冠词的复数形式) 和零位冠词形式:

hand:

- 1) They have this ignorance by the hand of God. (由 ……造成的)
 - 2) It sounds like a slap with the open hand. (用手掌)
- 3) The affair is controlled by a stronger hand than chance, providence. (由一个更强的力量)
 - 4) He's a kind man with an open hand. (慷慨的)
- . 5) The letter was delivered by hand. (派专人)
- 6) You were standing with idle hand beside. (袖手旁观)

head:

1) Her college education was giving her the big/swelled

head. (骄傲)

- 2) You had/hit the nail on the head. (中肯, 打中要害)
- 3) He has a head on his shoulder. (有头脑, 有见识)
- 4) The ferment came/drew/was brought to a head. (象 疮疖化脓般成熟)
 - 5) The ferment is gathering head. (酝酿成熟)
- 6) He's over head and ears/He's head over ears/He's head over heels in debt. (深陷)
- 7) I fell heels over head/head over heels into the well, (头朝下)

house:

- 1) He told me to keep the house all day. (果在家里)
- 2) She sang an encore and once more brought the house down/carried the house away/took the house by storm. (博得全场热烈掌声)
 - 3) They keep a good house /table. (常开盛宴款待宾客)
 - 4) We took a house for the summer. (租房)
 - 5) She cooks and keeps house for them. (管理家务)
 - 6) I'm going to move house. (搬家)
 - 7) They're playing house. (孩子们玩过日子) jaw:
 - 1) That started the jaws wagging. (喋喋不休地议论)
 - 2) There I saw a man with lantern jaws. (痩长脸的)
 - 3) She's all jaw. (一味空谈)
 - 4) Then just hold jaw/tongue! (住嘴) knife:
- 1) We're prepared to confront a war to the knife. (一场血战)
 - 2) He played a good knife and fork at lunch. (大吃一

顿)

3) She run off before you can say knife/Jack Robinson (说时迟, 那时快)

lamb:

- 1) God tempers the wind to the shorn lamb. (谚语) (对不幸的弱者, 上帝不会那么冷酷)
- 2) As well be hanged for a sheep as for a lamb. (谚语) (一不做二不休)
 - 3) I'll be back in two shakes of a lamb's tail. (一会儿)
 - 4) He's a wolf in lamb's skin. (披着羊皮的狼) leaf:
- 1) The fall of the leaf/year is close/near at hand. (秋天)
- 2) I'm going to turn over a new leaf and never smoke again. (改过自新)
 - 3) The trees came into leaf. (长出叶子来) lock:
 - 1) The cupboard door was on the lock. (用挂锁锁着)
- 2) She's a dark old woman with silver locks. (银白的头发)
- 3) The documents were kept under lock and key. (妥善收藏)
 - 4) I'll take over his duties lock, stock and barrel. (全部) 1 imp:
- 1) Taken in the lump, the team played well. (总的说来)
 - 2) He took my money in a lump. (全部, 一起)
- 3) Get out of my way, you big fat lump of a man! (蠢猪)

3.5.5 the/a/an/零+man/.../rope

比较各惯用、非惯用短语中的 the..., a/an ... (或 不带冠词的复数形式) 和零位冠词形式:

man:

- 1) He would be the last man to say such things. (最不可能……的人)
 - 2) They fought to the last man. (到最后一个人)
 - 3) It's astonishing to the average man. (对普通人来说)
 - 4) They applauded it to a man. (全体一致)
 - 5) Man is to man a wolf. (对于人) market:
- 1) You've brought your eggs to the wrong market/to a bad market. (打错了算盘)
- 2) He was base enough to make a market of his own flesh and blood. (利用……赚钱)
 - 3) I'll never make market with him. (和……打交道)
- 4) He decided to bring all his holdings to market. (拿 到市场 (交易所)出售)

nurse:

- 1) Difficulty is the nurse of greatness. (能够培育)
- 2) She left the baby with a nurse. (交护士、保育员)
- 3) She has put the baby out to/at nurse. (交奶妈寄养) pen:
- 1) He subsists by the pen. (靠写作)
- 2) It was a poem by an unknown pen. (由不知名作者写的)
 - 3) I wrote it with a pen. (用一只钢笔)
 - 4) He filled in the blank in/with pen and ink. (用钢

笔)

person:

- 1) It cannot be carried upon the person. (随身)
- 2) He has a fine person. (He's a man of an agreeable person.) (长得很漂亮)
- 3) He's handsome and healthy in person. (人长得很漂亮,很结实)

pot:

- 1) I tried everything to make the pot boil. (糊口)
- 2) Come on, let's keep the pot boiling. (热烈进行)
- 3) A pot often sent to the well is broken at last. (谚语) (常在河边走,没有不湿鞋)
- 4) If you touch pot, you touch penny (Touch pot, touch penny). (概不赊帐)
- 5) They called each other pot and kettle. (活用谚语 The pot calls the kettle black.) (他们俩是乌鸦落在猪身上,你说我黑,我说你黑)

radio:

- 1) We heard the news over/on the radio. (从广播中)
- 2) Somewhere a radio played gently. (收音机播出乐曲)
- 3) We've just sent him a message by radio. (用无线电报(无线电话))

rope:

- 1) He knew/has learned the ropes. (知道内情)
- 2) He threatened to give her a rope's end. (抽打)
- 3) I'll give her rope enough to hang herself. (任其放荡, 自取灭亡)

3.5.6 the/a/an/\$ + sail/.../street

比较各惯用、非惯用短语 中 的 the ..., a/an ... (或不带 冠词的复数形式) 和零位冠词形式:

sail:

- 1) It's most important to know how to trim the sails (to the wind). (随机应变)
 - 2) We took a sail with the two Indians. (乘一帆船)
 - 3) We had an easy sail. (平稳的航行)
 - 4) They made/set sail homeward bound. (启航)
 - 5) The ship got under sail. (扬帆起航)
 - 6) I saw it in full sail. (全速前进)
- 7) If we must be fellow-travellers I must shorten sail for you. (减低速度)

sea:

- 1) They had a villa by the sea. (在海边)
- 2) What say you to laying them in a glorious red sea of claret? (在大量的……)
 - 3) The boat shipped a sea. (被海浪打进来)
 - 4) He went to India by sea. (由海路)
- 5) The ship has gone/put out/put to sea (taken the sea). (出航)

shop:

- 1) He's come to the wrong, shop for that. (找错了)
- 2) He opened (a) shop on his own account. (开店)
- 3) The committee finished its business and closed up shop. (停止活动)
- 4) Two chemists were talking shop and I hardly understood a word they said. (讲行话, 谈专业问题)
 straw:
 - 1) It was the last straw on my poor father's back. (活用

It's the last straw that breaks the camel's back.) (使受重压的人支持不住的最后一点压力)

- 2) He might be only a straw, but she could catch at him. (活用 A drowning man will catch at a straw.) (抓住不放的一根稻草)
- 3) One cannot make bricks without straw. (谚语) (巧妇难为无米之炊)

street:

- 1) She lived on/walked the streets. (当妓女)
- 2) The man in/on the street knows little of that. (普通人)
 - 3) It's not the length of a street. (不远)
- 4) Jim's novel was a success and he began to live on easy street. (过优裕的生活)

3.5.7 the/a/an/零 + table/.../wing

比较各惯用、非惯用短语 中 的 the ..., a/an ... (或不带 冠词的复数形式) 和零位冠词形式:

table:

- 1) The facts are upon the table. (公开)
- 2) They keep an open table. (欢迎宾客)
- 3) We eat at a common table. (在一张饭桌上)
- 4) He's my companion at table. (吃饭时的) tail:
- 1) Now it's the tail that wags the dog. (小人物掌权)
- 2) The police have got a tail on me. (跟踪)
- 3) Boys go into tails at sixteen. (穿燕尾服)
- 4) When the bully saw my big brother, he turned tail (and ran). (逃跑)

tongue:

- 1) Better a fall on the hips than a slip of the tongue/lip. (说走了嘴)
- 2) You'd better keep a civil tongue in your head. (说话 讲礼貌)
- 3) The hound gave tongue when in sight of the quarry.
 (狗叫起来)
- 4) If only I had given tongue to my doubts about it!
 (说出)

top:

- 1) Mary was asked to sell twenty tickets, and she went over the top. (超额完成任务)
 - 2) There came a carriage without a top. (没有车篷的)
- 3) I couldn't find my umbrella and then I realized I was almost on top of it. (几乎就在它旁边)
- 4) Although his new job was very complicated, John was on top of it within a week. (完全掌握)
- 5) Mary worked at the store all day and on top of that she had to baby-sit with her brother. (除此之外, 还要……)

wing:

- 1) Time is on the wing and so must we, (飞一般过去)
- 2) The news set her on wings. (使……飘然欲仙)
- 3) Fear lent him wings. (使……跑得更快)
- 4) The captive has taken wing. (逃脱)
- 5) He produced the first speed wagon and gave wing to deliveries. (大大加快了……的速度)

第六章 "the/a/an/零+集合/物质 名词"惯用语

3.6.1 the/a/an/\$\square\$ + family/people/police

比较各组句中的三种冠词形式 (the ...为一种, a/an...与 无冠词复数所指相同为一种, 零位冠词形式为另一种).

family:

- 1) A great interest in gardening runs in the family. (世代相传)
- 2) He is the eldest of the family. (非惯用语,以下还有,不再一一注明)(子女当中)
- 3) It's no joke for a man with (a wife and) a large family to support. (不确指) (有很多子女的)
- 4) It was a rough time for people with large families.
 (不确指) (有很多子女的)
 - 5) He is a man of family.(出身名门的)
- 6) Himself (Mr Smith) and family came together. (本人及其家属)

people:

- 1) We here highly resolve ... that government of the people, by the people, for the people, shall not perish from the earth. (Lincoln) (民有、民治、民享的)
- 2) They are also an English-speaking people. (指听者未知)(说英语的民族)
- 3) They are all English-speaking peoples. (指听者未知) (说英语的民族)
 - 4) Their performance was praised by people of all walks

of life. (各界人士)

police:

- 1) Please go and fetch the police. (叫警察)
- 2) There is a fire police round the corner. (消防队)
- 3) Please phone (the) police at once. (给警察局打电话)
- 3.6.2 the/a/an/零+air/dust/metal/paper/water 比较各组例句中的三种冠词形式: air:
 - 1) There are rumours in the air. (在流传)
 - 2) The letter was sent on the air/by air. (航空寄出)
 - 3) What's on the air today? (在广播)
- 4) He took on a patronizing air. (指听者未知) (摆出……的姿态)
- 5) "It's I" sounds to me like putting on airs. (不确指) (装腔作势)
- 6) She was putting on high airs with her learning. (指 听者未知) (端起架子来)
 - 7) Don't put it in moist air. (在潮湿空气中)
- 8) Father's compliment has left him walking on air. (飘飘然)

dust:

- 1) We picked and shoveled and made the dust fly. (大干一场)
- 2) Since 1955, no less than nine national newspapers have bitten the dust. (垮台)
- 3) When the teacher gave the class five more hours of homework, the class kicked up/raised/made a dust/fuss. (比较 What a dust!) (一阵大乱)

- 4) He tried to throw dust in the eyes of the public. (蒙蔽)
- 5) I was obliged to eat dust before my creditors. (含垢忍辱)

metal:

- 1) The train ran off the metals. (出轨)
- 2) Aluminium is a light metal. (轻金属)
- 3) They are all non-ferrous metals. (有色金属)
- 4) He's a worker in metal. (金属加工工人)
- 5) He's made of true metal. (真是个铁打的汉子) paper:
- 1) His name continually appears in the paper(s). (在报纸上)
 - 2) It's not worth the paper it's written on. (毫无价值)
- 3) He began his career as a reporter on a (weekly) paper.
 (一家报纸的)
 - 4) Cut it out in paper. (用纸)
- 5) Problems of any sort are easily worked out on paper. (纸上谈兵)

water:

- 1) He's a humorist of the first water. (第一流的)
- 2) I drank/took the waters for rheumatism. (饮矿泉水)
- 3) He tried to fish in troubled waters. (混水摸鱼)
- 4) It was the first steamer beheld in Japanese waters. (日本海域)
- 5) Her fame, however, was written in/on water. (转眼就消失)
- 6) I was then in deep/hot/low/rough/smooth water. (处于困难/窘迫/拮据/艰苦/顺利的境地)

第七章 "the/a/an/零+抽象名词" 惯用语

3.7.1 the/a/an/ \mathbf{z} + aid/.../company

比较各组句中表示确指的、表示不确指或指听者未知的(不确指与指听者未知皆用 a/an ... 或无冠词复数名词)、表示概括指的三种名词所指形式:

aid:

- 1) We may travel with the aid of a map. (借助于)
- 2) Now he can read English novels by (the) aid of a dictionary. (靠着……的帮助)
 - 3) You may call in the aid of the law. (求助于)
- 4) It was a timely aid to my health. (指听者未知)(及时的助益)
- 5) The book provides aids for medical students. (不确指)(提供参考资料)
 - 6) What's all this in aid of? (为了帮助,用意在于) balance:
- 1) The fate of Italy was trembling in the balance. (处于危急之中)
- 2) We must strike a proper balance between work and leisure. (妥善协调)
- 3) The victory depended long in (doubtful) balance. (悬而未决)

bath, bathing:

- 1) He's taking the baths there. (做矿泉浴治疗)
- 2) He takes/has a bath in the morning, but she enjoys

frequent baths. (洗澡)

- 3) He had a bathing in the river. (游泳)
- 4) I enjoy bathing. (喜欢游泳)
- 5) 'There is good bathing in the Rhine. (良好的游泳条件、场所)

battle:

- 1) He has given the battle. (认输)
- 2) They provoked a battle. (挑起一场战斗).
- 3) He went forth and gave/offer battle to his enemies.
 (挑战)

care:

- 1) Her valuables were left in the care of her cousin. (由 …… 照看)
 - 2) He is without a care in the world. (无忧无虑)
- 3) Kindly ship the goods in care of our shipping agent. (由……代办,由……转交)

case:

- 1) Poverty, in the case of John, was considered honourable. (就……的情况来说)
- 2) In such a case, as in all cases, prevention is the best policy. (在这种情况下)
 - 3) In case/the event of need, ring me at once. (如果) company:
- 1) He visited the city in the company of the governor. (在……陪同下)
- 2) I saw a large company of soldiers marching this way.
 (一大队)
 - 3) They live in companies. (群居)
 - 4) I went in company with them. (和……一起)

5) If I'm wrong, I've erred in very good company. (许多大人物也有同样错误)

3.7.2 the/a/an/\$ + day/.../future

比较各组句中表示确指的、表示不确指或指听者未知的、表示概括指的三种名词所指形式:

day:

- 1) No scientist of his time can be named in/on the same day with Newton. (同日而语)
- 2) He's deeply interested in men of the day. (当代名人)
 - 3) Fair and softly go far in a day. (礼让好办事) (谚语)
- 4) It turned out to be stuff of a day. (使用寿命短的东西)
- 5) Let's call it a day. (比较 It's all in a/the day's work. 都是常事, 不足为奇. "You wait, you'll come crawling back to me."—"That'll be the day!"......"没那事!") (收工)
- 6) How can such a crime be committed in broad day/daylight? (大白天)
- 7) If you ran into him in London with his posh friends, he wouldn't give any of you the time of day. (ODCIE) (和……不打招呼,不理睬……)

dinner:

- 1) He invited her to the farewell dinner. (邀请参加送别宴会)
- 2) He treated me to an elaborate dinner. (请……吃一顿讲究的饭)
 - 3) The whole business was a (complete) dog's dinner/

breakfast. (一团糟)

- 4) He asked them to dinner. (清……进餐) dumps/loss/spirits:
- 1) He was down in the dumps. (垂头丧气)
- 2) I was at a loss. (困惑)
- 3) You're quite out of spirits. (没精打采)
- 4) They were all down in spirits/ in low spirits. (灰心)
- 5) He was agitated and ill at ease. (不安) effect:
- 1) The letter was to the effect that he would soon be back. (说是)
 - 2) She spoke to the same effect. (意思一样)
- 3) His remark had an effect on her. (对……有影响)
- 4) The law came into/took effect on July 1. (生效, 施行)

end:

- 1) We're determined to resist up to the (bitter) end. (到底)
 - 2) Soon the war was brought/came to an end. (结束)
 - 3) Read the article from end to end. (从头到尾)
- 4) I get occasional word of praise, some useful suggestions, and complaints world without end. (没完没了) fancy:
- 1) His book took/ caught the fancy of the public. (得到……的喜爱)
 - 2) I took (quite) a fancy to her. (爱上了)
- 3) I have a (great) fancy for kittens/Chinese paintings.
 (喜爱某事物)

- 4) He's full of fancy. (充满幻想) fashion:
- 1) He was dressed after the fashion of a sailor. (按……的款式)
- 2) He can speak and write French after/in a fashion. (多少)
- 3) They cook their food in a like fashion/in the same way/in like manner. (也象这样)
- 4) Her gowns are always in (the) fashion/out of fashion. (时髦/不时髦)

first:

- 1) I know that from the first. (一开始)
- 2) He'll get/take a first. (得第一)
- 3) They are all firsts. (都是头等货)
- 4) I didn't know him to be a cheat at (the) first. (起初)

future:

- 1) He lives in the future. (生活在对未来的想象中)
- 2) He has a future before him. (很有前途)
- 3) Be more careful in future/for the future. (今后)

3.7.3 the/9/an/ \mathbf{z} + game/.../line

比较各组句中表示确指的、表示不确指或指听者未知的、表示概括指的三种名词所指形式:

game:

- 1) One has to play the game here. (比赛守规矩)
- 2) You played the game of the rich. (为……效力)
- 3) She often played a double game guided by self-interest. (耍两面三刀)

- 4) They would often have a game with us. (瞒哄)
- 5) He only made game/fun/sport of my calamities. (嘲弄)

haste/hurry:

- 1) He left it behind in the mad haste to catch the express. (非常紧急)
- 2) Owing to the hurry of business I haven't yet consult him about the price. (事情紧迫)
- 3) I was in a hurry to attend the wedding of a friend.
 (急忙)
- 4) Marry in haste, and repent at leisure. (谚语) (急匆 匆结婚, 闲时会悔恨)

hell:

- 1) We knocked the hell/daylights out of the enemy. (打得……落花流水)
- 2) There is a difference between speaking necessary truths and embarrassing people for the hell of it. (只为恶作剧)
- 3) What the hell/What in hell are you making such a hawling about? (究竟为什么)
- 4) What a hell of an actor (he is)! (多么糟糕,多么了不起)
- 5) He turned the village into a hell on earth. (人间地狱)
 - 6) Go to hell! (见鬼去吧)
 - 7) He was running like hell. (全力,拚命) hope:
- 1) People flock to London with the hope of obtaining work as craftsmen. (抱着……的希望)

2) He came in (the) hopes of finding a job here. (抱着……的很大希望)

idea:

- 1) What's the big idea? (有何高见?)
- 2) That's the idea! (正是这个主意!)
- 3) What an idea! (多怪的念头啊!)
- 4) It exists only in idea for the present. (在计划中) justice/injustice:
- 1) I failed to see the justice of his accusal/remarks. (理解……是正当的)
- 2) You did her/committed an injustice/a great injustice. (使……受委屈)
 - 3) The portrait doesn't do her justice. (不大象)
- 4) The newspaper man didn't do justice to the story. (没有详尽讲述)
- 5) He did himself justice in performing the work. (充 分发挥力量)

lead:

- 1) France took the lead in the politics of Europe. (起主导作用)
- 2) He had the lead in the race. He had a lead of ten meters. (领先)
 - 3) Please give me a lead. (给……作示范)
 - 4) They were all gentlemen of lead. (头面人物) length:
- 1) She went (to) the length of saying that I had deliberately cheated her of the money. (甚至)
- 2) He went to great lengths toprove that the diamonds were real. (竭力)

- 3) He was first, half a length ahead. (以半艇身长度)
- 4) The letter was too long to be printed at length. (全文)
 - 5) At length his longings were satisfied. (终于) life:
- 1) I can't for the life of me remember where I met her. (无论如何)
- 2) There remain only some old folks who knew him in the life. (在……活着时)
 - 3) I don't believe in a life beyond the grave. (来世)
 - 4) They have a high aim in life. (生活的)
- 5) As a result of that accident he was crippled for life. (终生)
- 6) They dropped their booty and ran for (dear/their) life. (拚命)

line:

- 1) We must first look for a man in the line to take charge of the branch office. (內行的)
- 2) His water-colours were on the line. (挂在和眼一样高的地方)
- 3) Surely a man of fifty with grown-up children, and hung on the line, would not be reckless. (赫赫有名)
- 4) The champion is laying his title on the line in the fight tonight. (冒着失去……的危险)
- 5) The cars had to be drawn up in a line/in lines. (成行)
- 6) We have to draw a/the line at permitting him to come again. (不能允许)
 - 7) It will be written on a new line. (以……的方式)

- 8) Soldiers marched in column and attacked in line. (成 横排)
- 9) She quickly brought the class back in line. (守规矩)
- 10) That is out of/in line with our policy. (不符/符合)

3.7.4 the/a/an/ \Rightarrow + manner/.../opinion

比较各组句中表示确指的、表示不确指或指听者未知的、表示概括指的三种名词所指形式:

manner:

- 1) He answered in the same manner/a similar manner/like manner. (以同样方式)
- 2) It's in a manner/sense worthy of the highest praise. (在某种意义上)
 - 3) He's affable in manner. (态度) matter:
- 1) Anything/Nothing the matter with it? A great deal is the matter. (有/没有问题?)
- 2) You'll see how the matter stands/how matters stand. (情况如何)
- 3) The best way to reach Portugal is by boat, a matter of three days. (大约)
- 4) It's (a) matter for tears. (让人……(落泪、发笑等)的事)

meeting/glance/sight:

- 1) We felt like old friends at (the) first meeting. (一见 如故)
 - 2) He can tell the difference at a glance. (一眼看出)

- 3) He fell in love with her at first sight. (一见钟情) mind:
- 1) We're of the same mind. (有共同的见解)
- 2) No two men are of a mind. (一条心)
- 3) His absence of mind is proverbial. (心不在焉) name:
- 1) He goes by the name of Bob. (被人们称为)
- 2) Horrible cruelties were perpetrated in the name of religion. (以……的名义)
- 3) Business is done in another name. (以另一个人的名义)
- 4) She had a name for honesty/had the name of being honest. (因……而有名/有……的名声)
- 5) Now we are free in reality as well as in name. (名义上)
 - 6) I met a man, Bob by name. (名叫) night:
- 1) A fire broke out in the night/in the dead of night.
 (深夜)
 - 2) He comes home of a night. (常在夜里)
- 3) He came home and died of a Monday night. (见 WNCD, of 条) (在一天夜里)
 - 4) I can't sleep o'nights (of nights). (常常在夜里)
- 5) People often become famous in a night. (一夜之间, 忽然)
- 6) The prisoner got away at night/under (cover of) night. (夜晚/在夜色掩蔽下)

office:

1) What a pity! You didn't take the office. (领会这暗

示)

- 2) He held an (elective) office. (担任一项职务)
- 3) He took office in the Cabinet. (就职)
- 4) He held (the) office from 1903 to 1907. (任职)
- 5) The Labour party came into/went out of office. (执政/下野)

opinion:

- 1) We've had the best opinion. (同了专家的意见)
- 2) You should get a second opinion before you decide to have an operation. (再问另一位专家)
 - 3) I have a poor opinion of her. (对……评价不高)
- 4) I'm of (the) opinion that drastic steps must be taken. (……的意见是)
- 5) Whether or not he was a good general is a matter of opinion. (可能各有各的看法)

3.7.5 the/a/an/\$+ past/.../rank

比较各组句中表示确指的、表示不确指或指听者未 知 的、 表示概括指的三种名词所指形式:

past/present:

- 1) We admire Athens as it was in the past and as it is in the present. (在过去……在现在)
 - 2) That'll do for the present. (暂时)
- 3) He's a man with a past, and she also has had a past. (有一段暧昧经历)
 - 4) They are at present in Paris. (现在) place:
- 1) He was elected chairman in (the) place of Smith. (代替)

- 2) She's now just out of a place. (失了业)
- 3) His remarks are quite in place/a bit out of place, (合适/不合适)

Point,

- 1) She was at/on the point of breathing her last. (马上就要)
 - 2) I can't catch/get/see the point. (理解主要意思)
- 3) The stick ends in a point/tapers into a point at the other end. (顶端是尖的)
 - 4) He made a point of succeeding at all hazards. (坚持要)
 - 5) The case you take is not in point. (恰当)
 - 6) His remarks *lack point*. (不得要领) possession:
- 1) The city came into/was in the possession of the British troops. (被……占有)
- 2) We rejoice in the possession of the winner's cup. (为取得……而)
- 3) That's a personal possession/a favorite possession of his. (个人财物)
- 4) Now the Americans came into/is in possession of the city. (占有)
- 5) Put him in possession of the new information. (使 占有)

praise:

- 1) They all sang the praise of their host. (赞扬)
- 2) They heaped praises on him. (大加赞颂).
- 3) Much was said in praise of him. (赞扬) question:
- 1) He didn't speak to the question. (对题)

- 2) What you say is out of the question. (谈不到, 不可能)
 - 3) Let's leave it an open question. (未决问题)
 - 4) It's still open to question. (没有决定)
 - 5) It's out of/beyond/past question. (毫无疑问) rank:
 - 1) He rose from the ranks. (出身行伍)
 - 2) It was/stood in the first rank. (属第一流的)
 - 3) She talks to people of all ranks. (各阶层的)
 - 4) They're all persons of rank. (显贵的)
- 5) It's been given first rank. It's a school of first rank. (第一流的)

3.7.6 the/a/an/ \Rightarrow + secret/.../thought

比较各组句中表示确指的、表示不确指或指听者未知的、 表示概括指的三种名词所指形式:

secret:

- 1) We must at first find some people in the secret. (知道内情的)
- 2) She's again trying to pry into a secret of her sister's. (窥探秘密)
 - 3) I kept his picture in secret. 《秘密地》 sense:
 - 1) I can't make out the sense (理解其意)
- 2) He was a superior man in the sense of Confucius. (在……心目中)
- 3) I can't make a sense out of her words. (理解……有何意义)
 - 4) What he says is in a sense true. (在某种意义上)

- 5) It doesn't make sense. (有意义)
- 6) Can you make sense of it? (理解)
- 7) It's not complete in sense. (意义上) sight;
- 1) She was unable to restrain herself at the sight (of his distress.) (见此情景)
- 2) All human beings are equal in the sight of God. (在……心目中)
 - 3) He went out to take a sight of the sun. (观察一下)
 - 4) It took a sight of work. (大量的)
 - 5) He can play and sing at sight. (临时看着乐谱)
- 6) Land came in sight. We were/came in sight of land. (看得见)
 - 7) Take sight before firing. (瞄准) Sunday:
- 1) I came on the Sunday before Christmas. (在……那个星期日)
 - 2) He came on a Sunday. (在一个星期日)
 - 3) She comes/arrived here of a Sunday. (常在星期日)
- 4) Was it on Sunday (last) that he went there? Yes, he went there last Sunday. (比较 And on the previous Sunday I had been there.) (上星期日)
- 5) Hope to see you on Sunday (next). See you next Sunday, on Dec. 15.(比较 And the next Sunday, on Dec. 22, Henrietta will be coming to join us.) (下星期日)
- 6) Do you usually go to church on Sunday(s)? (在星期日)

temper:

1) You often appeal to the urgent temper of youth. (急

躁脾气)

- 2) He got into a temper. (发脾气)
- 3) She's now in a (fit of) temper/in a good temper. (发一阵子脾气/心情很好)
- 4) I never got out of temper with anybody. (忍不住发脾气)
 - 5) The woman is perverse in temper. (性情) thing:
 - 1) You look/I feel not at all the thing. (很不舒服)
- 2) I have a thing about the old lady. (对……有特殊的厌恶或好感)
 - 3) Well, of all things! (竟然如此)
- 4) I must be seeing things. I can't believe he's got a new car. (看到幻象)
- 5) Why, sure thing, I'm only glad to be of service to you. (当然)
- 6) Fine thing that you call yourself a man and the head of a family! (好啊)
- 7) It's (the) last thing to suppose her to have fallen ill. (最不可能)

thought:

- 1) The first thought was: "What's he up to?" (头一个想法)
- 2) I felt uneasy at the (bare) thought of the coming day. (每一想到)
 - 3) I never gave them a second thought. (再考虑一下)
 - 4) Second thoughts are best. (谚语) (三思而后行)
- 5) He realized its significance upon/with a thought. (一下子就……)

- 6) It may appear strange at first thought, but on second thought you'll see the point. (乍一想……再想一想)
- 7) He tends to act without (a moment's) thought, (不 假思索地)

3.7.7 the/a/an/零 + time/.../word

比较各组句中表示确指的、表示不确指或指听者未知的、表示概括指的三种名词所指形式:

time:

- 1) We can share a room for the time being/for a time.
 (暂时)
- 2) I had the time of my life there. (度过一生最快乐 (痛苦) 的日子)
- 3) What's the time? What do you make the time? (几点了)
 - 4) Conditions are changing all the time. (一首)
- 5) He was for a time a professor at Cambridge. (一度)
- 6) I had myself a time there. (玩得很好)
- 7) She's again making a time over the skimmed milk. (炒炒嗪嚷)
 - 8) Visitors are welcome at all times. (随时)
- 9) I knew that they were playing for time, but they had to go sooner of later. (拖延时间)
- 10) He has time to burn/can take his time over it. (有的是时间)
- 11) Such a thing sometimes took time to mend. (费时间)
 - 12) I couldn't make time to finish it. (腾出时间)

13) He was one of the greatest astronomers of all time. (历代, 从古至今)

trouble:

- 1) He won't take the trouble to compile/won't go to the trouble of compiling a handbook for us. (费功夫, 不辞辛苦)
- 2) She's having troubles with her daughters. (和……闹纠纷)
- 3) They're in trouble/in trouble with the police. (处于 困难中/和……闹纠纷)
 - 4) He hates to take trouble. (费功夫)
 - 5) She's certain to make trouble. (捣乱) truth:
 - 1) To tell the truth, I don't agree with you. (老实说)
 - 2) This is of a truth one of life's tragedies. (的确)
- 3) Japan was in truth a "hermit nation" sealed against the whole world. (的确, 事实上)

turn:

- 1) The tide of bad fortune was on the turn. (正在转变)
- 2) His condition has taken a turn for the better. (有转机)
- 3) We take it by turns, once a fortnight, to give the place a thorough going over. (轮流)
- 4) The younger children came forward in turn to be given a present from the Christmas tree. (依次)
- 5) He struggled to free himself from the twisting weeds which in turn wrapped themselves more and more closely round his legs. (反过来又……)

6) Dick loses friends by speaking out of turn. (不合时宜)

view:

- 1) In the view of Marxists, the people are the makers of history. (从……的观点看)
- 2) We made some change in our plan with the/a view of increasing the output. (抱着……的目的)
- 3) I sent him there with a view to getting some insight into the matter. (抱着……的目的)
- 4) In view of/With a view to what has preceded, it's now unnecessary to pay him in ready cash. (鉴于)
 - 5) He has some end in view. (怀抱着某种目的) way:
- 1) Mr White and his wife, by the way, are cousins. (说起来)
- 2) We'd just be in the way if we tried to help. (碍事)
- 3) A new departure in the way of steam engines has been invented. (在……方面)
 - 4) He is well on the way to recovery. (趋向)
- 5) His explanation is clearer by a long way. (比起……得多)
- 6) In a way/sense, this statement is true. (从某种意义上说)
- 7) By way of conclusion, several facts deserve mention. (作为)
 - 8) The battle got under way. (开始进行) word:
 - 1) I won't budge an inch till I get the word from

Mick. (得到命令)

- 2) At the word he vanished. (一听这话)
- 3) So she said and went out on the word. (这样说看)
- 4) When she starts shouting, nobody can get a word in edgeways. (插嘴)
 - 5) He consented at a word from her. (一提起……的话)
 - 6) In a word, he is tired of everything. (总而言之)
- 7) I've got word that he's not coming tonight. (得到信息)
- 8) He is faithful both in word/words and in deed/deeds. (说话)

例句出处缩略语

- (ALD) Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary of Current English, 1980
- (Brewer) Brewer's Dictionary of Phrase and Fable, 1975
- (Curme) Curme, G. O., Syntax, 1931
- (DAI) A Dictionary of American Idioms by M. T. Boatner et al, 1975
- (Eckersley) Eckersley, C. E. et al, A Comprehensive English Grammar, 1961
- (GCE) Quirk, R. et al, A Grammar of Contemporary English, 1972
- (Gordon) Gordon, E. M. et al, A Grammar of Present-Day English, 1980
- (Jespersen) Jespersen, O., A Modern English Grammar, 1909-49
- (LDCE) Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English,
- (LLCE) Longman Lexicon of Contemporary English, 1981
- (NDEC) Kenkyusha's New Dictionary of English Collocations, 1958
- (ODCIE) Oxford Dictionary of Current Idiomatic English, Vol. 2, 1983
- (Poutsma) Poutsma, H., A Grammar of Late Modern English, 1926-29
- (Schibsbye) Schibsbye, K., A Modern English Grammar,

- (Swan) Swan, M., Practical English Usage, 1980
- (UGE) Quirk, R. et al, A University Grammar of English, 1974
- (WNCD) Webster's New Collegiate Dictionary, 1973
- (WNNCD) Webster's Ninth New Collegiate Dictionary,
 1983
- (WNWD) Webster's New World Dictionary of the American Language, 1972
- (Wood) Wood, F. T., Current English Usage, 1962; English Colloquial Idioms, 1975; English Prepositional Idioms, 1979
- (Zandvoort) Zandvoort, R. W., A Handbook of English Grammar, 1948
- (甘希娜)M. 甘希娜、《英语语法》(汉译本), 1965
- (井上义昌) 井上义昌:《英米语用法辞典》,1960
- (小西友七) 小西友七:《英语前置词活用辞典》,1974;《英语基本动词辞典》,1980
- 未包括所引著名文学家诗、文 (句后只注其姓氏)

[General Information] 书名=英语冠词用法详解 作者=刘国善 页数=293 SS号=10649543 出版日期=1988年01月第1版

前言 目录 目录

第一编

英语冠词规律用法(|): 基本用法

第一章英语冠词的汉语含义

1.1.1 a/an, the有时分别相当于"一"和"这(那)

"

- 1. 1. 2 a/an, the往往不相当于"一"和"这(那)"
- 1.1.3冠词无词汇意义,但不可少也不可互换
- 1.1.4 "零位冠词"在汉语中无相当的表现法

第二章 冠词a/an, the的几种读音

- 1. 2. 1 a/an的轻读读音
- 1. 2. 2 a/an要重读的情况
- 1. 2. 3 the的轻读读音
- 1.2.4 the要重读的情况

第三章a/an, the的来源、本意与基本用法

- 1. 3. 1-2 the与a/an的来源
- 1. 3. 1 the来自指示代词
- 1.3.2 a为an之弱化变形; an来自数词
- 1. 3. 3—5 one与a/an的不同
 - 1.3.3数词性质与指不确定、指类属性质
 - 1.3.4惯用语中二者不可互换
 - 1.3.5二者与数词连用的不同
- 1. 3. 6-7 a/an, t he用于指单位名词
- 1.3.6 a/an("每")原属介词
- 1.3.7 the表示"每"或"论"
- 1. 3. 8—10 a/an, the的基本用法
- 1.3.8 "不确指"与"确指"
- 1.3.9 a/an用于"指听者未知"
- 1. 3. 10 a/an, the基本用法小结
- 1.3.11冠词名称article的来源

第四章 名词类别与冠词对名词的附加性质

- 1.4.1名词类别与抽象化程度的差别
- 1.4.2名词类别示意图
- 1.4.3可兼属不同类别的名词
- 1.4.4冠词为附于名词的标志
- 1.4.5冠词的虚词性质

第五章 "独指"、"确指"、"不确指"与"指听者未知"

- 1.5.1-3"独指"形式与其他所指形式的比较
 - 1.5.1最常见的名词四种所指
 - 1.5.2无冠词"独指"不同于无冠词复数所指
 - 1. 5. 3带t he "独指"不同于带t he "确指"
- 1.5.4-7"指听者未知"用得比"不确指"更广泛
 - 1.5.4 a/an用于不可数名词 "指听者未知"
 - 1.5.5 "不确指"与"指听者未知"的比较
- 1.5.6 a daughter of Mrs Brown's 之类 "指听者未知"
 - 1. 5. 7冠词加于双重表所有形式的各种意义 第六章 三种貌合神离的无冠词形式
- 1. 6. 1无冠词专有名词、可数名词(复)、不可数名词
 - 1.6.2兼有可数性与不可数性的名词
 - 1.6.3可数名词单数亦可取零位冠词形式
 - 1.6.4常用零位冠词形式的一些个体名词
 - 1.6.5三种貌合神离无冠词形式的比较
 - 1.6.6零位冠词"概括指"应区别于别具所指标志的

无冠

词形式

- 第七章四种"类指": "概括指"及a(an) / 复数 / t he "类指"
 - 1.7.1-2 "概括指" —— "类指"的一种
 - 1.7.1 "概括指"首先用于不可数名词

- 1.7.2不可数名词亦可取"指听者未知","确指"形式
- 1.7.3—5 a/an、复数、the "类指"——又是三种"类指"
- 1.7.3从"不确指"与"确指"扩展而来的"类指" 用法
 - 1.7.4与"不确指"、"确指"同形,但属"类指"
 - 1.7.5 a/an、复数、the, 三种"类指"各司其职
 - 1.7.6-7 a/an "类指"与复数"类指"的代表性质
 - 1.7.6代表一般个体与代表一类
 - 1. 7. 7改用或加用some能区别是否属"类指"
 - 1.7.8—11 the "类指"的广泛应用
 - 1.7.8 the "类指" (用单数或复数名词)直指整类
 - 1.7.9 "t he+形容词、分词等"的"类指"用法
 - 1.7.10 "t he+形容词、分词等"亦可为"确指"
 - 1.7.11 the并非可随意加于任一形容词、分词

第八章名词加与不加冠词的主要用法小结

- 1.8.1四种"特指"形式与四种"类指"形式
- 1.8.2从冠词的基本用法到扩展用法

第二编

英语冠词规律用法(||):扩展用法

第一章a/an使得特殊事物一般化

- 2.1.1 a/an加专有名词指不确定的一般事物
- 2.1.2 a/an加专有名词指听者未知的一般事物
- 2.1.3 the使专有名词借作普通名词
- 2.1.4 the强调特定属性或特殊针对性
- 2.1.5 a/an, the指示专有名词转作普通名词
- 2.1.6由指自然界独有事物转指一般事物
- 第二章 "免去冠词(或只用t he)+词头大写"使得一般事物特殊化
 - 2. 2. 1用于"独指"的家庭成员
 - 2. 2. 2家人与外人之间"独指"家庭成员

- 2. 2. 3其他范围内的独有人员和独有事物
- 2.2.4 the加于次生专有名词
- 2.2.5 the加于由of 短语构成的专有名词
- 2. 2. 6 the加普通名词转为专有名词
- 2. 2. 7 the使普通名词等组成专有名词

第三章t he使语句中未确定的事物特定化

- 2.3.1一4最高级形式等不能决定是"确指"
 - 2.3.1带定语不一定是"确指"
 - 2.3.2 "形容词最高级等+名词"不一定属"确指"
 - 2.3.3 is the happiest与is happiest等
 - 2. 3. 4表示比较范围的名词加t he问题
 - 2.3.5—6 most/least, best/worst, first/last带the与否
 - 2. 3. 5指量代词most 是否带t he
 - 2.3.6 best/worst, first/last 等是否带the
 - 2.3.7—8 the用于"相对确指"
 - 2.3.7前未提及、又无定语的"相对确指"
 - 2. 3. 8惯用短语中表示"相对确指"的the
- 2. 3. 9与形容词、副词比较级连用的副词t he 第四章a/an使得综合、抽象事物具体化
- 2.4.1—2 a rainy day/spring与a mere 2 days/
 - ·.i—zarainy day/spring—janere zdays hours等
 - 2.4.1季节、月份、周日、三餐等名词前冠词的用法
 - 2.4.2 a/an加于带定语的复数名词
 - 2.4.3-7 a/an加于带定语的各种不可数名词
 - 2.4.3带定语不可数名词"概括指"与"指听者未知
 - 2.4.4物质名词、集合名词表示"一种"等
 - 2. 4. 5带定语不可数抽象名词前加a/an
 - 2.4.6带前位定语或带后位定语
 - 2. 4. 7一时、一次、一定程度的运动或状态等
 - 2.4.8—10惯加a/an的无定语不可数名词

,,

- 2. 4. 8几种不可数名词无定语也常加a/an
- 2.4.9 a/an加于无定语不可数名词属惯用法
- 2. 4. 10惯用短语中可数、不可数名词所带a/an 第五章零位冠词形式使得具体事物综合化、抽象化
 - 2.5.1-3 可数名词零位冠词形式的意义与用法
 - 2. 5. 1零位冠词形式woman等的意义
 - 2. 5. 2零位冠词形式man等担任主语等成分
 - 2.5.3成语、谚语中零位冠词形式作主语
 - 2.5.4—9可数名词零位冠词形式担任表语等
 - 2.5.4 man等表示事物属性的表语
 - 2.5.5 apprentice等表示身分、状态的表语
 - 2.5.6表示独有亲属、职位的表语
 - 2.5.7表示身分、职位等的补语
 - 2. 5. 8表示身分、职位等的同位语
 - 2. 5. 9表示身分、职位等的as短语
 - 2.5.10-11可数名词零位冠词形式担任宾语
 - 2. 5. 10 man等担任宾语
 - 2.5.11惯用动词短语中的零位冠词形式
 - 2.5.12—13可数名词零位冠词形式作介词宾语
 - 2.5.12 man, apprentice等担任介词宾语
 - 2. 5. 13惯用介词短语中的零位冠词形式
- 第六章无冠词或加t he的复数形式使独特事物一般 化、分别化
 - 2.6.1专有名词复数形式(不带冠词)
 - 2.6.2指独有事物名词的复数形式
 - 2. 6. 3带t he专有名词、指独有事物名词复数
 - 2. 6. 4带t he姓名等的复数形式
- 第七章 无冠词或加t he的复数形式使综合、抽象事物具体化、分别化
- 2. 7. 1指"不确定"或"指听者未知"的"多种"、 "大量"

2. 7. 2无冠词物质名词复数

- 2.7.3 the+物质名词复数
- 2. 7. 4无冠词不可数抽象名词复数
- 2.7.5 the+不可数抽象名词复数
- 2.7.6复数形式可与单数形式在意义上有所不同 第八章a/an "不确指"转"类指"使一般事物典型化、 综合化
 - 2.8.1 a/an "类指"来自"不确指"用法
 - 2.8.2 a/an "类指"的典型化、概括化意义
 - 2. 8. 3 a/an "类指"与a/an "不确指"的不同
 - 2. 8. 4 a/an "类指"能否替换无冠词复数 "类指"
 - 2.8.5单、复数两种"类指"用于各种可数名词
 - 2. 8. 6复数 "类指"、a/an "类指"与the "类指"的

替换

- 第九章t he "确指"转"类指"使特定事物综合化、抽象化
 - 2.9.1-2 四种"类指"的不同综合化、抽象化程度
 - 2.9.1 the "类指"的较高综合、概括性
 - 2.9.2 men/a man/the man/man等用于"类指"
 - 2. 9. 3—4 "t he+单数名词" "指类"
 - 2.9.3 the wolf/the play等概括一类
 - 2.9.4 the wolf/the bottle等象征一类
 - 2.9.5-10 the用于指阶级、民族等名词单、复数
 - 2.9.5 the+集合名词单数 / 个体名词复数
 - 2.9.6 "t he+单数/复数"与无冠词复数
 - 2. 9. 7 public. people, yout h加冠词与否
 - 2.9.8形容词转为指民族名词的几种情况
 - 2. 9. 9用于不同所指的指民族名词
 - 2. 9. 10 the Jew与the Jews指类比较
 - 2.9.11—14 the poor(属性), the pound(数量), the pi ano(乐器等)
 - 2. 9. 11 "the+形容词、分词等"用于"类指"
 - 2.9.12 "the+形容词、分词等"用于"确指"

- 2.9.13 "t he+数词、单位词"指一类数量
- 2.9.14对乐器、影剧、球类的t he类指用法

第三编

英语冠词惯用法

- 第一章冠词与某些代词、形容词、副词连用的惯 用法
 - 3.1.1-2 冠词可以或不可与哪些代词等连用
 - 3.1.1冠词与部分代词等连用居词组中位
 - 3.1.2冠词不与某些代词直接连用
 - 3. 1. 3-5 前位冠词+几种代词(+名词)
 - 3. 1. 3 a/the one, another, the other
 - 3. 1. 4 a/the+someing/nothing等
 - 3.1.5 a/the+few/little等
 - 3.1.6—11—些代词、副词等+中位冠词+名词
 - 3. 1. 6 bot h/all+the
 - 3. 1. 7 such/what +a/an
 - 3. 1. 8 half/double+the+, half a/an
 - 3. 1. 9 so/as/too/how good+a/an
 - 3. 1. 10 more/no less+a/an
 - 3. 1. 11 quite/rather +a/an(the)

第二章冠词的省略与重复

- 3.2.1-6并列名词前省略或重复冠词
 - 3.2.1省略表示联合,重复表示区分
 - 3. 2. 2完全把冠词略去的并列名词
 - 3. 2. 3省略冠词与并非省略的零位冠词
 - 3. 2. 4略t he名词单数可相当复数
 - 3. 2. 5略t he "类指"与留t he "类指"或复数"类指

"并用

- 3.2.6独立状语中的类似并列与冠词的省略
- 3. 2. 7-8 与ki nd, sor t 等连用名词前有无冠词
- 3.2.7 a/this kind of 与of a/this kind等
- 3.2.8 a saint(sort)of a man等

- 3.2.9—11 习惯上略去冠词的几种情况
- 3.2.9 Had ever pupil ?与Never did baby 等
- 3. 2. 10句子、短语开头冠词的省略

)

- 3. 2. 11标题、电报、提纲、注释等中略去冠词 第三章相仿惯用语中不同冠词形式的不同抽象性
 - 3.3.1惯用语中名词的确定 / 不确定 / 概括性
 - 3.3.2 have the/a heart与take heart等
 - 3.3.3 take the/a part 与take part 等
 - 3.3.4用一、二种冠词形式构成惯用语的名词
 - 3.3.5 in the place, in place(in a place非惯用语
- 3. 3. 6 of an age, of age(of the age非惯用语) 第四章仅由不同冠词区别的结构相仿的惯用语 示例
 - 3.4.1以一冠词相区别: 理据与习惯
 - 3.4.2由同一动词与同一名词构成的惯用语
 - 3. 4. 3由同一介词与同一名词构成的惯用语
 - 3. 4. 4由同一动词与不同名词构成的惯用语
 - 3.4.5由同一介词与不同名词构成的惯用语
 - 3.4.6由不同动词与同一名词构成的惯用语
 - 3.4.7由不同介词与同一名词构成的惯用语
- 3. 4. 8因转作另类名词而改变抽象程度 第五章 "t he/a/an/零+个体名词"惯用语
 - 3.5.1 the/a/an/零+arm//bud
 - 3. 5. 2 the/a/an/零+card/ /cup
 - 3. 5. 3 the/a/an/零+dog/ /foot
 - 3. 5. 4 the/a/an / 零+hand/ /lump
 - 3.5.5 the/a/an/零+man/ /rope
 - 3.5.6 the/a/an/零+sail/ /street
 - 3.5.7 the/a/an/零+table/ /wing
- 第六章 "t he/a/an/零+集合/物质名词"惯用语
 - 3.6.1 the/a/an/零+family/people/police

- 3. 6. 2 the/a/an/零+ai r/dust/metal/paper/water 第七章 "the/a/an/零+抽象名词"惯用语
 - 3.7.1 the/a/an/零+ai d/ /company
 - 3.7.2 the/a/an/零+day/ /future
 - 3.7.3 the/a/an/零+game/ /line
 - 3.7.4 the/a/an/零+manner/ /opi ni on
 - 3.7.5 the/a/an/零+past/ /rank
 - 3.7.6 the/a/an/零+secret/ /thought
 - 3.7.7 the/a/an/零+time/ /word

例句出处缩略语